STANFORD·VNIVERSITY·LIBRARY

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

CLASSICAL SECTION

STANFORD·VNIVERSITY·LIBRARY

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

CLASSICAL SECTION
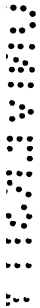
PREFACE

EXPERIENCE proves that the time devoted to the elements of Latin should be not less than one full school year of at least nine months. Any attempt to shorten this time, either by hurrying over the ground or by making the course itself shorter and easier, can lead only to a shallow and imperfect knowledge of the indispensable fundamentals, which will later be sure to delay progress and to discourage both the pupil and the teacher. It is the aim of this book to help in accomplishing all that can be accomplished thoroughly in this time.

With this object before them, the authors have carefully considered the peculiar difficulties that are met in the course of the first year's work, and have tried to find a better way of overcoming them. They have proceeded throughout on the principle that the only genuine interest, and that which it pays best to cultivate in the study of elementary Latin, arises from the pupil's actually doing the work which that study involves, and from a feeling on his part that he is pursuing the study in a manner which will enable him to master its future problems as they arise. To be sure, this sense of mastery and the consequent pleasure and profit will depend most largely upon how well the teacher understands the kind of preparation which it requires the pupil to make from day to day. But the book also is an important factor in the case, for it will make it either easy or difficult to secure this preparation. And it is to the desire of the authors to lend all possible aid to the teacher in this effort that the present book owes most of its distinguishing features.

Reviews. — Six general reviews are introduced at convenient points (on pages 36, 73, 99, 123, 141, and 177), each review containing a classified summary of all the words, inflections, constructions, and idioms that have been used since the preceding review. These summaries will not only enable the teacher with a minimum of labor to conduct such further exercises on special points as the

iii

84702

pupils may need, but they should in themselves lead many of the pupils to test occasionally the completeness of their grasp of previous lessons; and they will throughout the book furnish a convenient means of reviewing and making sure of anything that may be in danger of slipping away.

Vocabularies. — The words used in the exercises are moderate in number, and are made up for the most part of those which occur with greatest frequency in Caesar and Nepos. Opportunity is given for a complete mastery of these by their repeated use at frequent intervals throughout the book; for it should go without saying that a sure, clear-cut knowledge of a limited number of words, which carries with it a high standard for future acquisition, is a far more valuable result of the first year's work than any amount of ground covered at this stage "to acquire a vocabulary." In accordance with this belief the authors have in the regular exercises confined themselves to the words given in the vocabularies; and the supplementary exercises also, as well as the longer reading exercises at the end of the lessons, will be found to contain a smaller number of new words than is usual in such exercises. Care has been taken to avoid confusing the beginner by abbreviations; and the complete forms of the genitive and of the principal parts of the verb are, in the case of each declension and conjugation, at first written out in the vocabularies in full, until the pupil has become familiar with their formation.

Irregular Words. — It is a common experience that pupils learn the adjectives with irregular genitive and dative, the irregular comparatives and superlatives, the possessive adjectives, the indefinite pronouns, etc., readily enough when they first occur together in a lesson, but that they cannot be depended on to recall their peculiarities when these words appear unexpectedly in later exercises. In the present book all the most common of these are first introduced singly as individual words in the vocabularies and exercises, and are then finally gathered up as related groups in separate lessons devoted to them. Thus the form and use of the possessive adjectives, for instance, is firmly fixed before the relation of these to the personal and reflexive pronouns is discussed; and words like **maximus, minimus, optimus, proximus, ultimus,** and **summus** are well known as individuals before the irregular comparisons are taken up as a whole. The same is true of the principal parts of the verbs, of which a systematic treatment is

introduced after the different methods of formation in the four conjugations have occurred in individual verbs used in the lessons.

Idioms and Phrases. — Considerable attention is given to a number of very common phrases like quā dē causā, prīmā lūce, summō monte, sīgna movēre, nē . . . quidem, sē recipere, operam dare, etc., both by repeated cross-references in the footnotes and by summaries in the general reviews.

Inflections. — Pains has been taken to point out constantly the relation between the different declensions and conjugations, and between the regular and the irregular nouns and verbs. Attention is directed especially to the structure of the verb — a feature of the book which, it is hoped, will do something to discourage learning by rote, and will help to emphasize the importance of the tense and mood signs and of the personal endings as significant elements of the word, whose value an English-speaking pupil cannot learn to appreciate without close and continued observation. The exercises have been purposely varied in such a way as to secure an extensive drill on the different persons, numbers, cases, genders, tenses, and moods.

Constructions. — Such constructions as are not markedly different from the corresponding English ones — for example, the clauses with ubi, postquam, quod, and quamquam, the indicative with sī, the complementary infinitive, and a number of prepositional phrases — are first employed in the exercises without special explanation. They are not specifically discussed until later, when the more difficult related constructions are taken up. In this way time is gained for a more extensive treatment and illustration of the latter, and a basis for comparison is obtained which will enable the pupil to grasp these more readily. The statements and discussions of grammatical points have all been considered very carefully, with a view to making them simple and clear, even if it has been necessary to break with tradition in some matters. As in the case of the inflections, pains has been taken to secure a frequent and repeated illustration of all the different constructions in the exercises.

Exercises. — Believing that nothing is so essential as concentration of effort during the first year's work, the authors have, in the exercises as well as in the vocabularies, carefully excluded what might tend to confuse or to distract from the main purpose. Hence no supplementary reading exercises have been introduced before

Lesson LX. This does not mean, however, that the regular Latin-English and English-Latin exercises of the lessons are made up of unconnected and unrelated sentences. A number of them deal with a single subject in connected discourse, and in many of the others the sentences are so constructed with relation to each other that they serve the same purpose as does connected discourse; that is, to get the pupil's mind into the habit of viewing the sentence and its parts not only as a unit in itself, but as a step in a progressive series, which leads from what precedes to what follows. Full use has been made, therefore, of connectives, the introductory relative, and the various arrangements of the parts of the sentence made necessary by their relation to the context.

Supplementary Reading Exercises. — Beginning with Lesson LX, one of these is found at the end of each lesson; and two longer exercises are added for further reading after the lessons are completed. None of them contains any constructions outside of those which have been previously treated, and new words not found in the regular vocabularies have also been, so far as possible, excluded. This should enable pupils to read them with considerable speed, especially as the subject-matter is interesting in itself. Of the two longer exercises at the end, the first is an adaptation of a story in Aulus Gellius; the second is an adaptation of Ritchie's "The Argonauts."

The present book has certain features in common with Moore's "First Latin Book," but differs from it also in a number of points, and is, in fact, an entirely new book, written with a different purpose. The introductory chapter is practically the same in both books, and the vocabularies also are necessarily very much alike, that of the present book being, however, considerably smaller. In the arrangement of the material there are some important differences, though the general plan is much the same. The grammatical explanations of the present book are almost entirely new; and the exercises, both regular and supplementary, are entirely so. As this book is intended for a younger class of pupils, its exercises are simpler and contain fuller illustrations of the vocabulary and the grammatical points, and fewer difficulties and idiomatic peculiarities.

If the authors were to add a word of suggestion to teachers who intend to use this book, it would be such as might accompany any

elementary Latin book ; namely, that the translation of the exer-
cises should be looked upon as the result of the pupil's work and
preparation, and not as the preparation itself.   When the right
sort of preparation is made from day to day in grammar, vocabulary,
and preparatory construction work in both languages, the Latin-
English exercises can, as a rule, be translated at sight.   If the
teacher will make it a practice to read these sentences to the
class in Latin, slowly and with intelligent expression, pausing
after each group of related words long enough to allow them to
grasp the meaning and helping them out whenever it is necessary,
much time and labor can be saved, especially in the first half of
the year.   In the case of the English-Latin exercises, it is well to
have the class make a preparatory examination of the sentences
before the exercises are assigned for final preparation.   This may
be done by asking the pupils to point out illustrations of certain
constructions, or by asking them to examine one sentence after
the other and to mention what there is in each that they think
will require their special attention.   The teacher will, of course,
give as little direct information as possible, beyond correcting or
allowing the class to correct errors, and should aim merely to get
the individual pupils to form correct habits of attacking the prob-
lems of the exercises by themselves.   If this is done, they will
approach the preparation of the English-Latin exercise for the
following day with confidence and interest, and with the prospect
of bringing in a good share of the sentences in correct form.

C. H. M.
J. J. S.

CONTENTS

xii   CONTENTS

THE ELEMENTS OF LATIN

INTRODUCTION

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

1. The Latin language is so named because it was
first spoken by the ancient Latin tribe which inhabited
the neighborhood of Rome. It gradually spread until
it became the principal language of the Roman Empire,
which once covered the whole western civilized world.
It lasted as the common spoken language well into the
Middle Ages, and as the universal language of scholars
until about the middle of the eighteenth century.
Some books are still written in Latin, and some scholars
speak it. It is also used in our time as the language
of the Roman Catholic Church.

2. Latin is the parent of those modern languages
which are known as Romance languages — such as
French, Italian, and Spanish. About one-half of all
our English words are borrowed from foreign lan-
guages, and four-fifths of these borrowed words come
either directly or indirectly from Latin.

Alphabet

3. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English,
except that it has no j or w.

4. U as the vowel form of **V** was not invented until the Middle Ages, but for convenience both forms are generally used. **K** is found only in **Kalendae,** *Calends, the first of the month,* and a very few other words. **Q** is always followed by **u** as in English. **Y** and **Z** were introduced about 50 B.C. to represent the sounds of the corresponding Greek letters, and are found only in foreign words.

5. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y.** The diphthongs are **ae, oe, au, eu, ei, ui.**

6. The consonants are all other letters. They are divided into

Mutes (stopped sounds) **p, b, t, d, c, k, q, g.**
Liquids ; nasals .   . **l, r ; m, n.**
Sibilant   .   .   . **s.**
Double consonants   . **x = cs** or **gs, z = ds.**

Pronunciation

7.   VOWELS

The mark ‾ over a vowel means that it is *long,* and ‿ that it is *short.*

ā as the last a of *aha'!*   ă as the first a of *aha'!*
ē as in *whey.*   ĕ as in *whet.*
ī as in *pique.*   ĭ as in *pick.*
ō as in *omen.*   ŏ as in *omit.*
ū as *oo* in *pool.*   ŭ as in *put.*
ȳ ў̆ like the German *ü* or the French *u.*

8.   DIPHTHONGS

ae as *ai* in *aisle.*   eu as *eu* in *feud.*
oe as *oi* in *oil.*   ui as *ui* in *fruit.*
au as *aw* in *owl.*   ui as *we.*

9. The sounds of **ei, ui, eu,** will be more accurately reproduced if the English words are somewhat drawled, so that the component vowels may be heard more distinctly ; e.g. *fay-int.*

10.   CONSONANTS

Consonants are sounded as in English, except that

c and g are always hard, as in *cat, get.*
i consonant is always like *y* in *yet.*
s is always sharp, as in *sun, sea.*
t is always sounded as in *time.*[1]
v is like *w* in *wine.*
x is like *ks.*
z is like *dz* in *adze.*
bs is like *ps.*
bt is like *pt.*
ch is like *k.*

Doubled consonants, like **ll, nn, tt,** must be sounded separately : **il-le, án-nus, mít-tō.** Compare the English *book-case, rat-trap.*

Syllables

11. A Latin word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels and diphthongs : **aú-rum,** *gold ;* **a-má-vit,** *he loved ;* **for-ti-tú-dō,** *bravery.*

12. In dividing words into syllables :

(*a*) A single consonant is attached to the following vowel : **lĕ-gă-tus,** *ambassador.*

(*b*) When two or more consonants stand together, as many are usually attached to the following vowel as can begin a word : **fór-tis,** *brave ;* **prŏ-vín-ci-a,** *province ;* **cō-gnŏ́-scō,** *I recognize.*

(*c*) But compound words are divided into their component parts : **ád-sum,** *I am present.*

---

[1] Never sounded as in *action.*

Quantity of Vowels

13. Vowels are either *long* (marked -) or *short* (marked ⌣).

In this book only the long vowels are marked.

14. A vowel is regularly short before a vowel or **h** : mĕus, *mine ;* nĭhil, *nothing.*

(*a*) A few exceptions occur, chiefly in proper names derived from the Greek : **Aenĕas.**

15. It will be useful to remember that, with a few exceptions which will be marked, a vowel before **nt** or **nd** is short.

16. Diphthongs, vowels formed from diphthongs, and vowels due to contraction are long : caūsa, *reason ;* inĭ-quus (ĭn + aēquus), *unfair ;* cŏgō (cŏ + ăgō), *compel.*

Also a vowel before the consonant **i, nf, ns,** and often before **gn,** is long : ĕius, *of him, his ;* ĭnfāns, *child ;* mĕnsa, *table ;* rĕgnum, *kingdom.*

Quantity of Syllables

17. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. It is long also if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by a double consonant : **ex,** *from ;* **mors,** *death.*

It is important to remember that it is the *syllable,* not the vowel, which is long by position. Thus the last *syllable* of **vŏcant** is long by position, owing to the time required to pronounce the consonants **nt,** but the *vowel* **a** is short.

Accent

18. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima ;* the next to the last, the *penult ;* and the syllable before the penult, the *antepenult.*

19. Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: **pă-ter, má-ter.**

20. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult, if the penult is long: **Rō-má-nus.** Otherwise they are accented on the antepenult: **tá-bŭ-la,** *table;* **ma-rí-tĭ-mus,** *maritime.*

21. A few monosyllables, called enclitics, because they are closely joined to the preceding words, always throw an accent upon the syllable before them, even if that syllable be short. The most common enclitics are **-ne,** a sign of a question, and **-que,** *and:* **audítne,** *does he hear?* **rosǎque,** *and a rose.*

22.   **Exercise for Pronunciation**

In	faucibus	lupī	os	inhaeserat.	Mercēde
In	*the throat*	*of a wolf*	*a bone*	*had stuck.*	*For pay*
igitur	condūcit	gruem,	quī illud	extrahat.	Hōc
therefore	*he hired*	*a crane*	*who it*	*was to take out.*	*This*
grūs	longitūdine		collī	facile effēcit.	Cum
the crane	*because of the length*		*of his neck*	*easily did.*	*When,*
autem	mercēdem	postulāret,	subrīdēns	lupus	et
however,	*his pay*	*he asked for,*	*smiling,*	*the wolf*	*and*
dentibus	īnfrendēns,	"Num tibi,"	inquit,	"parva	mercēs
his teeth	*gnashing,*	" Does it to you,"	*said he,*	" small	pay*
vidētur,	quod	caput	incolume	ex	lupī faucibus
seem	*that*	*your head*	*unharmed*	*from*	*a wolf's throat*
extrāxistī?"					
you have got out?"					

23. With the exception of the article, the Latin language has the same parts of speech as the English; and the same grammatical terms — *case, number, mood, tense, voice, declension, inflection,* etc. — are used in both English and Latin grammar.

Case

24. The cases in Latin are the *nominative, vocative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative.* These are generally distinguished by different forms, as will be explained later. There are also a few nouns which have a *locative* case, but this case had been nearly lost before the Romans developed a literature. The meanings of the cases will be shown in the following lessons.

Gender

25. There are three genders in Latin, as in English; but the gender of a Latin noun is more often determined by its ending than by its meaning. Special rules for gender will be given for each class of nouns; but the following general rules are useful:

(*a*) *Masculine* are names of males, also names of rivers, winds, and months: **pater,** *father;* **Caesar,** *Caesar;* **Rhēnus,** *Rhine;* **Eurus,** *east wind;* **Martius,** *March.*

(*b*) *Feminine* are names of females, also names of countries, islands, towns, and trees: **māter,** *mother;* **Tullia,** *Tullia;* **Eurōpa,** *Europe;* **Sicilia,** *Sicily;* **Athēnae,** *Athens;* **quercus,** *oak.*

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION

26.   /   **Stem in $\bar{a}$**[1]

The gender is feminine, except of nouns which denote males (**25 a**).

27.   NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE

		SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	{	fābula, *story.*	fābulae, *stories.*
	{	rosa, *rose.*	rosae, *roses.*
ACC.	{	fābulam, *story.*	fābulās, *stories.*
	{	rosam, *rose.*	rosās, *roses.*

(a) Notice how the Latin plural is distinguished from the singular, and that, while in English the nominative and accusative (*i.e.* objective) have the same form, in Latin the endings differ.

Form the accusative singular, the nominative and accusative plural of **puella**, *girl;* **via**, *road;* **parva**, *small;* **māgna**, *large.*

28.   VOCABULARY

NOUNS	ADJECTIVES
fābula, f. *story, tale.*	bona, f. *good.*
puella, f. *girl.*	lāta, f. *wide, broad.*
rosa, f. *rose.*	longa, f. *long.*
Tullia, f. *Tullia.*	māgna, f. *large, great.*
via, f. *road.*	parva, f. *small, little.*

---

[1] The stem is the body of the word to which the endings are attached. The last vowel of the stem, as we shall see, is sometimes changed when the ending is added.

PARTICLES

-ne, a sign of a question (**21**).　　et, *and*.

VERBS

est, (*he, she, it*) *is*.　　　　**sunt**, (*they*) *are*.

amat, (*he, she, it*) *loves, is lov-*　　**amant**, (*they*) *love, are loving,*
　ing, likes, etc.[1]　　　　　　　*like*, etc.

29.

1.	**Puella est parva.**	*The girl is small.*
2.	**Viae sunt longae.**	*The roads are long.*
3.	**Tullia amat parvam puellam.**	*Tullia loves the little girl.*
4.	**Amantne puellae rosās ?**	*Do the girls like roses ?*

(*a*) Notice that in Latin there is no article : we may translate **puella**, *girl, a girl, the girl*, as the situation requires. The fourth example above might have been translated, *Do girls like the roses ?*

(*b*) Notice also that the adjectives agree with their nouns in the ending.

30. RULE. — The Subject of a finite [2] verb is in the Nominative.

31. RULE. — The Direct Object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative.

(W. 289, 308; B. 166, 172; AG. 339, 387; H. 387, 404.)

32. 1. Fābula est longa.　2. Lāta est via.　3. Longa via est lāta.　4. Tullia est puella.　5. Parva puella est Tullia.　6. Tullia amat māgnam rosam.　7. Amatne puella longās fābulās ?　8. Parvae puellae fābulās amant.　9. Bonae fābulae sunt longae.　10. Estne Tullia māgna puella ?　11. Tullia est puella māgna et bona.　12. Viae sunt longae et lātae.

---

[1] In Latin there is but one form, **amat**, for the English *he loves, he is loving, he does love*. Which English form is to be used will generally be clear from the connection in which the word is found.

[2] That is, in any mood except the infinitive.

33. 1. The road is long. 2. The roads are broad. 3. The broad road is long. 4. Girls like roses. 5. Does the girl like the rose? 6. The girl likes large roses. 7. Is the story good? 8. The stories are good and long. 9. The little girls like a long story.

LESSON II

FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)
(W. 59; B. 20; AG. 40–42; H. 78.)

34. Rosa, *rose*

STEM rosā-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., VOC.[1]	rosa, *a rose.*	rosae, *roses.*
GEN.	rosae, *of a rose.*	rosārum, *of roses.*
DAT.	rosae, *to a rose.*	rosīs, *to roses.*
ACC.	rosam, *a rose.*	rosās, *roses.*
ABL.	rosā, *with*[2] *a rose.*	rosīs, *with roses.*

(*a*) The terminations, printed above in full-faced type, represent the case-endings together with the final vowel of the stem.

(*b*) Notice what cases are alike in the paradigm. Make a table of the terminations and commit it to memory.

35. POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

1. **Puellae rosa est pulchra.**   *The girl's rose is beautiful.*
2. **Filiam Tulliae amant.**   *They love Tullia's daughter.*

(*a*) Notice that the genitives **puellae** and **Tulliae** tell the persons who possess the rose and the daughter. Such a genitive is called a *Possessive Genitive.*

36. RULE. — **The Genitive is used to denote the Possessor.**

(W. 353; B. 198; AG. 343; H. 440: 1.)

---

[1] The vocative is the case of address: in English, 'O king, great is thy power'; in most nouns it has the same form as the nominative.

[2] This translation of the ablative is only one of a number of possible translations; the various other meanings will be given later.

37. VOCABULARY

NOUNS

fīlia,[1] f. *daughter.*
patria, f. *fatherland.*
rēgīna, f. *queen.*
silva, f. *wood, forest.*

ADJECTIVES

mala, f. *bad, wicked.*
multa, f. *much, many.*
nova, f. *new.*
pulchra, f. *beautiful, pretty.*

PARTICLES

sed, conj. *but.*
nōn, adv. *not.*

VERBS

habet, *(he, she, it) has, is having.*
habent, *(they) have, are having.*

38. 1. Tullia est fīlia rēgīnae. 2. Fīlia rēgīnae est pulchra. 3. Fīliae Tulliae sunt parvae. 4. Rēgīna novās rosās habet. 5. Parvae puellae pulchrās rosās habent. 6. Rosae fīliārum sunt māgnae. 7. Rēgīna bona patriam amat. 8. Rēgīna mala patriam nōn amat. 9. Suntne viae lātae et bonae? 10. Viae patriae nōn sunt multae. 11. Silva rēgīnae est pulchra. 12. Patria silvās multās et pulchrās habet.

39. Notice how the order of the preceding sentences differs from that in English. Latin being an inflected language, that is, having different forms to express the relation of words to each other, admits of greater freedom in the arrangement of a sentence than English. For example, if some one should say in English, *The queen the girl loves,* we should not know whether *queen* was subject or object; but in the Latin **Rēgīna puellam amat,** the case-endings make the construction clear. Study the following sentences :

1. **Rēgīna puellam amat.** *The queen* (in contrast to the king, or any one else) *loves the girl.*
2. **Puellam amat rēgīna.** *It is the girl* (not some one else) *the queen loves.*

40. Translate the following sentences, and see how many different meanings you can give by changing the position of the Latin words. Remember the Latin order is significant ; it is never a matter of chance.

---

[1] Dative and ablative plural, **fīliābus.**

41. 1. Tullia's fatherland is beautiful. 2. The queen's wood is not large. 3. The girls have new stories. 4. The stories of the girls are many. 5. The girl's new story is good. 6. The daughters of the queen are bad. 7. The queen's daughter is little, but she loves new stories. 8. Are large forests beautiful?

LESSON III

FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

42.   PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

1. **Alexandra est rēgīna.**   *Alexandra is the queen.*
2. **Tullia et Iūlia sunt puellae.**   *Tullia and Julia are girls.*

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the nominatives **rēgīna, puellae** are in the predicates, and define or describe the subjects **Alexandra** and **Tullia et Iūlia**. Such nouns as **rēgīna** and **puella** are called *Predicate Nouns.*[1]

(*b*) Notice that nouns were used in this way in sentences 4, 5, 10, and 11 of Lesson I, and sentence 1 of Lesson II.

43. RULE. — **A Predicate noun agrees with the subject in Case.**

(W. 290; B. 168; AG. 283, 284; H. 393.)

44.   DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT

1. **Tullia fīliae rosam dat.**   *Tullia gives (her) daughter a rose.*
2. **Tullia puellīs fābulam**   *Tullia tells the girls a story.*
   narrat.

(*a*) Notice that the datives **fīliae** and **puellīs** indicate the persons to whom something is given or told. Such a dative, denoting the person toward whom the action of the verb is directed, is called the *Dative of the Indirect Object.* It may often be translated by the English objective case with *to* or *for.*

45. RULE. — **The Indirect Object of a verb is in the Dative.**

(W. 326; B. 187; AG. 361; H. 424.)

---

[1] Predicate adjectives also have been freely employed, since the Latin usage does not differ from the English. See **65**.

46.   VOCABULARY

NOUNS

cūra, f. *care.*   Ītalia, f. *Italy.*
epistula, f. *letter.*   nauta, m. *sailor.*
fāma, f. *fame, reputation.*   poēta, m. *poet.*
Graecia, f. *Greece.*   vīta, f. *life.*

ADJECTIVES

clāra, f. *renowned, famous.*   mea, f. *my.*
grāta, f. *pleasing, acceptable.* tua, f. *your* (when only one
                                     person is addressed).

VERBS

dat, (*he, she, it*) *gives, is giving.*   dant, (*they*) *give, are giving.*
laudat, (*he, she, it*) *praises, is*   laudant, (*they*) *praise, are*
  praising.   *praising.*
narrat, (*he, she, it*) *tells, is tell-*   narrant, (*they*) *tell, are tell-*
  ing.   *ing.*

47. 1. Ītalia est patria nautae. 2. Patria māgna cūra rēgīnae est. 3. Puella poētae epistulam dat. 4. Nauta poētīs grātam fābulam narrat. 5. Poēta, estne tua fāma māgna? 6. Poēta clāram vītam laudat. 7. Laudantne poētae Graeciam et Ītaliam? 8. Clāram vītam tuam laudant poētae. 9. Graecia est mea patria, Ītalia est patria nautae. 10. Nōn longās sed grātās fābulās puellīs narrant.[1]

48. 1. Italy is the fatherland of the sailors. 2. The queen's cares are many. 3. They[2] give acceptable letters to the sailor. 4. They are telling your daughters[3] famous stories. 5. Is the fame of Greece pleasing? 6. The poet is praising my beautiful fatherland. 7. The sailor's life is not long, but famous.

---

[1] Notice the emphasis given by the position. See **39.**
[2] Notice that the English pronoun *they* is in Latin expressed by the verb ending.
[3] See **37,** n. 1.

LESSON IV

SECOND DECLENSION

(W. 64, 65; B. 23; AG. 45, 46; H. 82, 83.)

Stem in *o*

49. The gender of nouns of the second declension ending in -us in the nominative is masculine.

50.   Servus, *slave*

STEM servo-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., VOC.	servus, serve	servī
GEN.	servī	servōrum
DAT.	servō	servīs
ACC.	servum	servōs
ABL.	servō	servīs

(*a*) The vocative singular of such nouns ends in -e. In all other nouns and in all plurals it is the same as the nominative.

(*b*) Notice what cases have the same terminations; make a table of the terminations and commit it to memory.

(*c*) All the feminine adjectives given in the preceding vocabularies have corresponding masculine forms in -**us** declined like **servus**: **bonus, clārus, longus, māgnus, meus, parvus, tuus,** etc.

(*d*) Decline together, **bonus amīcus, lātus ōceanus.**

51.   APPOSITIVES

1. **Tullia, fīlia tua, rosam habet.**   *Tullia, your daughter, has a rose.*
2. **Marcus, amīcus meus, poëtam amat.**   *Marcus, my friend, likes the poet.*

(*a*) Notice that **fīlia** is in the same case as **Tullia** and defines who is meant; and that **amīcus** bears the same relation to **Marcus.** Such a noun explaining another noun which refers to the same person or thing, is called an *Appositive*, as in English.

52. RULE. — An Appositive agrees with its subject in Case.
(W. 291; B. 169 : 2; AG. 282; H. 393.)

Decline together **puella Tullia, Marcus dominus.**

53.   VOCABULARY

NOUNS

agricola, -ae, m. *farmer.*   ōceanus, -ī, m. *ocean.*
amīcus, -ī, m. *friend.*   servus, -ī, m. *slave.*
dominus, -ī, m. *master, owner.*   vīlicus, -ī, m. *steward, super-*
Marcus, -ī, m. *Marcus.*   *intendent of an estate.*
    vīlla, -ae, f. *country house, farm.*

VERBS

cūrat, (*he,* etc.) *cares for, is*   nāvigat, (*he,* etc.) *sails, is sail-*
    taking care of.   *ing.*
cūrant, (*they*) *care for, are*   nāvigant, (*they*) *sail, are sail-*
    taking care of.   *ing.*

54. 1. Dominus Marcus vīllam cūrat. 2. Vīlicus bonum amīcum Marcum laudat. 3. Marcus est agricola et amīcus dominī. 4. Māgna cūra est vīlla dominī. 5. Vīlicī multās vīllās dominōrum cūrant. 6. Multōs servōs et multās cūrās dominus habet. 7. Marcus servō tuās epistulās dat. 8. Amīce Marce, estne agricola vīlicus clārus? 9. Nautae ōceanum nāvigant sed agricolae vīllās cūrant. 10. Tullia, fīlia dominī, amīcō meō fābulam narrat.

55. 1. The steward's reputation is good. 2. Marcus, the owner of the country house, has a steward. 3. The sailor Marcus sails the ocean. 4. The sailor praises the broad ocean. 5. Has the owner many slaves? 6. The slaves care for the country house, but do not sail the ocean. 7. The farmer gives the new slave a letter. 8. Your friends, the poets, praise the famous forests of Italy.

LESSON V

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

(W. 64, 65; B. 23; AG. 46; H. 83.)

NEUTER NOUNS

56. The gender of all nouns of the second declension ending in -**um** is neuter.

57.   Dōnum, *gift*

STEM dōno-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., VOC.	dōnum	dōna
GEN.	dōnī	dōnōrum
DAT.	dōnō	dōnīs
ACC.	dōnum	dōna
ABL.	dōnō	dōnīs

(*a*) Notice that the nominative, the vocative, and the accusative have the same form. This is true of all neuters.

(*b*) The masculine and feminine adjectives given in the preceding vocabularies have neuter forms in -**um** : **bonum, clārum, longum, māgnum, parvum**, etc. These are declined like **dōnum**.

58.   ABLATIVE OF PLACE

1. **Marcus in hortō est.**   *Marcus is in the garden.*
2. **Lupus in silvā errat.**   *The wolf is wandering in the wood.*

(*a*) Notice that **in hortō, in silvā**, answer the question *Where? In what place?* Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of Place.*

59. RULE. — **The Place Where is expressed by the Ablative with the preposition** *in.*

(W. 401 ; B. 228 ; AG. 426 : 3 ; H. 483.)

60.

NOUNS

argentum, -ī, n. *money.*
campus, -ī, m. *plain, field.*
dōnum, -ī, n. *gift.*

fīlius,[1] -ī, m. *son.*
hortus, -ī, m. *garden.*
lupus, -ī, m. *wolf.*

perīculum, -ī, n. *danger.*

VERBS

errat, (*he,* etc.) *wanders, is wandering.*

errant, (*they*) *wander, are wandering.*

fugat, (*he,* etc.) *puts to flight, is putting to flight.*

fugant, (*they*) *put to flight, are putting to flight.*

habitat, (*he,* etc.) *lives, dwells,* etc.

habitant, (*they*) *live, dwell,* etc.

labōrat, (*he,* etc.) *works,* etc.

labōrant, (*they*) *work,* etc.

servat, (*he,* etc.) *saves, is saving.*

servant, (*they*) *save, are saving.*

PARTICLES

ibi, *there.*
in, prep. with abl., *in, on.*

ubi, *where* (relative and interrogative).

61. 1. Agricola in hortō labōrat. 2. Fīlius parvus in perīculō est. 3. Argentum multum est māgna cūra. 4. Dōna amīcōrum nōn māgna sed grāta sunt. 5. Lupus in silvā errat ubi servī meī labōrant. 6. Ubi habitat vīlicus Marcī? 7. In campō habitat ubi tua vīlla est. 8. Fīliōs dominī Marcī servant servī bonī. 9. Fīliās Tulliae in silvā malus lupus fugat. 10. Ibi fīliī et fīliae agricolārum māgnō in [2] perīculō sunt.

62. 1. Has the sailor money? 2. Sailors are in great danger. 3. The poet's sons are wandering in the broad plain. 4. Have poets great fame in Italy? 5. There they are putting to flight many wolves. 6. The master does not give the bad slaves a gift. 7. They [3] praise my small but pleasing gifts. 8. The slaves are not working in the gardens.

---

[1] The genitive and vocative singular of fīlius is fīlī.
[2] A monosyllabic preposition frequently stands thus between an adjective and its noun.   [3] See **48**, n. 2.

LESSON VI

REVIEW OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

63. Review the first and second declensions, **34, 50, 57**.

64. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND
DECLENSIONS

(W. 108; B. 63; AG. 110; H. 91.)

As stated in **50** *c*, **57** *b*, adjectives have masculine, feminine, and neuter forms corresponding to those of nouns. The full declension of these adjectives is shown thus:

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	bonus, bone	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

65. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES. — PREDICATE
ADJECTIVES

1. **Amīcus est bonus.**
2. **Puella est pulchra.**
3. **Dōnum est grātum.**
4. **Amīcī sunt bonī.**
5. **Puellae sunt pulchrae.**
6. **Dōna sunt grāta.**
7. **Rēgīna māgnam cūram habet.**
8. **Poēta pulchrōs hortōs laudat.**

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences and in those of all the preceding lessons the adjectives have the same *Gender*, *Number*, and

Case as the nouns they modify; also that in the first six sentences the adjectives are in the predicate. Compare these with predicate nouns (**42**).

66. RULE.— **An Adjective agrees with its noun in Gender, Number, and Case.**

(W. 293; B. 234; AG. 286; H. 394.)

67. In the sentences used thus far the adjectives have the same terminations as the nouns they modify; but this is not always so — we must say, **bonus agricola, bonī agricolae,** etc., since **agricola** is masculine. Decline **clārus poēta.**

68.   VOCABULARY

bellum, -ī, n. *war.*   Mūsa, -ae, f. *Muse.*
gladius,[1] -ī m. *sword.*   oppidum, -ī, n. *town.*
Horātius,[1] -ī, m. *Horace.*   populus, -ī, m. *people.*
Rōmānus,[2] -a, -um, *Roman.*   itaque, conj. *therefore.*

IMPERFECT TENSE OF THE VERBS

erat, (*he*, etc.) *was.*   erant, (*they*) *were.*
narrābat,[3] (*he*, etc.) *was telling,*   narrābant, (*they*) *were telling,*
   told.   *told.*
habēbat, (*he*, etc.) *was having,*   habēbant, (*they*) *were having,*
   had.   *had.*
habitābat, (*he*, etc.) *was living,* habitābant, (*they*) *were living,*
   lived.   *lived.*

---

[1] The genitive singular of all nouns in -ius ends in a single -ī; the accent is always on the penult: gládī, Horátī.

The vocative singular of all proper names in -ius, like that of fīlius, ends in -ī: Horátī, fílī.

[2] Also used as a substantive, *a Roman.*

[3] Notice how the forms **narrābat, narrābant** are related to the present **narrat, narrant. Narrābat** and similar forms belong to the imperfect tense, which is equivalent to the English progressive past (*he was telling*), although we often translate by the English past indefinite (*he told*).

After the model of the verbs given in the vocabulary form the imperfects of amat, fugat, laudat, and servat. But the imperfect of dat is dābat, dăbant.

69. 1. Horātius e clārus poëta. 2. Poëtam clārum populus Rōmānus an at. 3. Fīlius vīlicī erat et in Ītaliā habitābat. 4. Vīl m ·parvam, dōnum amīcī, habēbat. 5. Campōs pulchrā , nōn oppida māgna, amābat. 6. Nōn bella longa sed vītam agricolārum laudābat. 7. Horātius erat in silvā ubi lupus malus errābat. 8. Gladium novum nōn habēbat; itaque māgnō in perīculō erat. 9. Sed Mūsae lupum fugant et poëtam servant. 10. Itaque poëta Mūsās amat et laudat.

70. 1. Where was the famous poet living? 2. Many poets lived in Greece. 3. They loved the great fame of (their)[1] fatherland. 4. The Roman people loved towns and gardens. 5. They were praising the long wars of Greece and Italy. 6. Your friends gave the poets many pleasing[2] gifts. 7. The poets did not have great gardens and much money. 8. Horace was in great danger, but the Muses saved the poet's life.

LESSON VII

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

71. **Nouns in -er and -ir**

(W. 66, 67; B. 23; AG. 47; H. 85.)

	Puer, *boy*	**Ager,** *field*	**Vir,** *man*
STEM	**puero-**	**agro-**	**viro-**
		SINGULAR	
NOM., VOC.	puer	ager	vir
GEN.	puerī	agrī	virī
DAT.	puerō	agrō	virō
ACC.	puerum	agrum	virum
ABL.	puerō	agrō	virō

[1] Omit. [2] Translate, *many and pleasing.*

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	puerī	agrī	virī
GEN.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
DAT.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
ACC.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
ABL.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

(*a*) Notice that with the exception of the nominative and the vocative singular these nouns are declined like **servus**; also that the only difference between the declension of **puer** and **ager** is that **puer** keeps the **e** of the nominative throughout, while **ager** drops it. Most nouns in **-er** of the second declension drop the **e**, like **ager**.

72. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

1. **Poēta cum fīliō errat.**	*The poet is walking with (his) son.*
2. **Cum nautīs habitābat.**	*He lived with the sailors.*
3. **Rēgīna cum fīliābus in hortō erat.**	*The queen was in the garden with (her) daughters.*

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the ablative with **cum** is used to denote the person who accompanies another. Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Accompaniment.*

73. RULE. — Accompaniment is regularly expressed by the Ablative with the preposition *cum*.

(W. 392; B. 222; AG. 413; H. 473 : 1.)

74. VOCABULARY

NOUNS

aedificium, -ī, n. *building, house.*
ager, agrī, m. *field.*
liber, librī, m. *book.*
līberī,[1] **līberōrum,** m. *children* (free-born).

magister, magistrī, m. *school-master, teacher.*
praemium,[2] **-ī,** n. *reward.*
puer, puerī, m. *boy.*
vir, virī, m. *man.*

---

[1] Not used in the singular. **Līberī** is, in its origin, the plural of the adjective **līber**, *free*, which will be given in the next lesson; **puerī**, plural of **puer**, also is used for *children*.

[2] The genitive singular of neuter nouns in **-ium** ends in single **-ī**; **praemium, praemī** (**68**, n. 1).

ADJECTIVES

antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient, old.*   validus, -a, -um, *strong, sturdy.*

FUTURE TENSE OF THE VERBS

erit, *(he,* etc.) *will be.*   habēbit, *(he,* etc.) *will have.*

erunt, *(they) will be.*   habēbunt, *(they) will have.*

amābit,[1] *(he,* etc.) *will love.*   servābit, *(he,* etc.) *will save.*

amābunt, *(they) will love.*   servābunt, *(they) will save.*

PARTICLES

cum, prep. with abl. *with.*   semper, adv. *always.*

75. 1. Ibi magister cum puerīs erat. 2. Līberī bonī in agrō erunt. 3. Bonī puerī cum magistrō praemia habēbunt. 4. Marcus agricola cum servīs in agrō labōrat. 5. Virī cum puerīs in campīs errābunt. 6. Magister puerōrum et puellārum librōs curābit. 7. Fīliābus et fīliīs librōs pulchrōs vir dabat. 8. In aedificiō līberī amīcīs fābulās narrābunt. 9. Itaque puerī erunt virī validī; bella amābunt et ōceanum nāvigābunt. 10. In oppidō antīquō virī aedificia semper servābunt.

76. 1. The children will live with the teacher. 2. Horace lived with (his) slaves in the town. 3. The wolves will not be in the fields, but in the forest. 4. The master with (his) good slaves will have a reward. 5. Strong men saved the old buildings. 6. The teacher will not tell bad boys a story. 7. Boys will always love the books of the poet Horace. 8. Great fame will always be the reward of a poet.

---

[1] Notice how these futures are related to the present and imperfect forms of the same verbs. Form futures, singular and plural, of **errat, habitat, fugat, laudat, narrat,** and **servat,** and write sentences containing these forms.

3

LESSON VIII

ADJECTIVES IN -er

(W. 109–111; B. 64, 65; AG. 111, 112; H. 91.)

77. Adjectives in **-er** are declined like nouns with this ending; the feminine nominative shows whether the adjective drops the **e** like **ager**, or retains it like **puer**.

78.   Niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	niger	nigra	nigrum
Gen.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
Dat.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
Acc.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
Abl.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō

PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
Gen.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
Dat.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
Acc.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
Abl.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

Miser, misera, miserum, *wretched*

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	miser	misera	miserum
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	miserī	miserae	misera
GEN.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
DAT.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
ACC.	miserōs	miserās	misera
ABL.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

79. VOCABULARY

aeger, -gra, -grum, *feeble, sick.*
cēterī, -ae, -a,[1] *the rest of.*
līber, -era, -erum, *free.*
miser, -era, -erum, *wretched, unhappy.*
auxilium, -ī, n. *aid, assistance, help.*
līberat, (*he,* etc.) *sets free.*

niger, -gra, -grum, *black.*
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful.*
sacer, -cra, -crum, *sacred.*
tener, -era, -erum, *delicate, soft, tender.*
equus, -ī, m. *horse.*
herba, -ae, f. *grass.*
vocat (*he,* etc.) *calls, calls upon.*

80. 1. Equī nigrī in agrīs errābunt. 2. Herbam teneram aegrī equī amābant. 3. Servus cum equīs pulchrīs erat in campō. 4. Marcus, vīlicus dominī, nautās miserōs[2] servābit. 5. Dominus puellīs tenerīs auxilium nōn dabit. 6. Poēta erat in perīculō et Mūsās sacrās vocābat. 7. Mūsae sacrae miserō poētae auxilium dabunt. 8. Tenerōs fīliōs vīlicī rēgīna pulchra līberābit. 9. Līberatne dominus cēterōs servōs cum puerīs? 10. Itaque cēterī erunt līberī et in agrō nōn labōrābunt. 11. In silvā antīquā sunt aedificia multa et sacra. 12. Amīcus epistulās multās poētae sacrī cūrābit.

81. 1. My teacher had beautiful books. 2. Tullia, the poet's daughter, was sick. 3. The rest of the children will be strong and handsome men. 4. The master was working there with the sick slaves. 5. He was calling the black horses in the field. 6. The black slave will not give the horses tender grass. 7. The handsome children of the poet were telling stories in the house. 8. The good children will have books, beautiful rewards.

---

[1] Usually plural; the masculine and the neuter are frequently used as substantives. [2] Compare 67.

LESSON IX

THE VERB *SUM, to.be*

82. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive of **sum (561).**

(W. 173; B. 100; AG. 170; H. 205.)

(*a*) Notice that the endings of the verb indicate the *person* and *number*, as the endings of nouns indicate the *case* and *number*. Thus far only the third person has been employed : **est, erat, erit** in the singular ; **sunt, erant, erunt** in the plural. The subjects of the first and second persons (*I, we, you*) are, in Latin, expressed only for emphasis ; these pronouns will be given later.

83. RULE. — **A finite verb agrees with its subject in Number and Person.**

(W. 296; B. 254: 1; AG. 316; H. 388.)

84. 1. Sum, eram, erō. 2. Es, erās, eris. 3. Estis, erātis, eritis. 4. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 5. Erat, esse, erit. 6. Estis, eritis, erunt.

85. 1. You (sing.) are, you (sing.) were. 2. You (plur.) will be, you were. 3. I was, I shall be, they are. 4. They are, they were, they will be.

86.   DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

1. **Puer dōnum habet.**	*The boy has a gift.*
2. **Dōnum est puerō.**	*A gift is (belongs) to the boy ;* i.e. *The boy has a gift.*
3. **Puellae rosās habent.**	*The girls have roses.*
4. **Puellīs rosae sunt.**	*Roses are (belong) to the girls ;* i.e. *The girls have roses.*

(*a*) Notice these two ways of expressing possession. The datives **puerō, puellīs** are in the predicates with **est** and **sunt** to tell the persons to whom **dōnum** and **rosae** belong, and the meaning is the same as in sentences 1 and 3. Such a dative is called a *Dative of Possessor*. The thing possessed is the subject of the verb.

87. Rule. — **The Dative is used with *sum* to denote the Possessor.**

(W. 340; B. 190; AG. 373; H. 430.)

88. 1. Dominus bonus multōs hortōs habet.   2. Lātī campī et aedificia dominō bonō sunt.   3. Poētae gladius nōn erat ; itaque lupum nōn fugābat.   4. Cum rēgīnā in hortīs pulchrīs eritis.   5. In hortō sacrō Mūsārum cum amīcīs erāmus.   6. Dōna et praemia fīliābus tuīs magister dabit.   7. Puellīs multī librī, dōna magistrī, erunt.   8. Erisne cum fīliīs meīs in aedificiō antīquō ?   9. Vir validus miserīs puellīs auxilium dabat.   10. Itaque clāra fāma virō bonō semper erit.   11. Erāsne ibi cum amīcīs, ubi argentum multum nauta servābat ?

89. Whenever possible translate the following sentences in two ways :

1. The Muses had sacred woods.   2. Will Marcus, the owner, have much money ?   3. The unhappy queen and her children will have many cares.   4. With the rest of the slaves you will be free.   5. The steward will chase away the wicked men.   6. Therefore the black horse will have tender grass.   7. You were with the other sailors on the broad ocean.   8. Your daughters will have many gifts and rewards.

LESSON X

FIRST OR *ā* CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE : PRESENT SYSTEM

90. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive active [1] of **amō (550).**

(W. 174; B. 101; AG. 184; H. 207.)

---

[1] The present infinitive should be learned now for convenience, although it will not be used in the exercises until later.

(*a*) Notice that all these forms, with the apparent exception of the first person singular of the present indicative, are formed from the stem **amā-**, which may be obtained by dropping -re of the present infinitive. This form **amā-** is called the present stem, and the tenses formed from it belong to the present system.

91. The personal endings express person, number, and voice. They are given for the active voice in the following table :

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST	-m, -ō	-mus
SECOND	-s	-tis
THIRD	-t	-nt

(*a*) The ending -**m** is used in the first person singular of the imperfect, -ō in the present and the future.

92. The imperfect is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the syllable -**bā-**,[1] sometimes called the tense sign of the imperfect. To this the personal endings are then joined : **amā-bā-s, amā-bā-mus.**

The tense sign of the future is generally -**bi-**, but appears as -**b-** in the first person singular and -**bu-** in the third person plural : **amā-bi-s, amā-b-ō.**

93. Inflect like **amō** the following :

fugō, fugāre, *to put to flight.*   servō, servāre, *to save.*
laudō, laudāre, *to praise.*   vocō, vocāre, *to call.*

94. 1. Laudō, laudābās, laudābit. 2. Servābitis, servābāmus, servat. 3. Fugāmus, fugābāmus, fugābimus. 4. Vocat, vocābis, vocābat. 5. Fugābis, laudābō, servābātis. 6. Fugant, fugābam, fugābunt.

---

[1] Notice, however, that before a final **m**, **t**, or **r** and before **nt** (**15**), all long vowels become short: **amăt, amābăm, amābănt.**

95. 1. He is calling, they will save. 2. I am praising, I was praising, I shall praise. 3. You are putting to flight, you were putting to flight, you will put to flight. 4. He calls, they called, you will call. 5. You save, you will save, you saved.

96. <center>VOCABULARY</center>

aedificō,-āre, *to build* (aedificium).
dē, prep. with abl. *about, concern-ing.*

lupa, -ae, f. *she-wolf* (lupus).
pūgnō, -āre, *to fight.*
Rōma, -ae, f. *Rome.*

<center>Rōmulus, -ī, m. *Romulus.*</center>

97. 1. Rōma erat antīquum oppidum in Ītaliā. 2. Ibi populus Rōmānus habitābat. 3. Validī virī erant Rōmānī et cum cēterīs populīs Ītaliae pūgnābant. 4. Rōmānī Rōmam, pulchrum oppidum, semper amābunt et laudābunt. 5. Rōmulus, clārus Rōmānus, Rōmam aedificābat. 6. Magister, līberīs pulchram fābulam dē virō Rōmulō narrās. 7. Fābulam grātam dē puerō Rōmulō narrābō. 8. Lupa Rōmulum cūrābat et vītam miserī puerī servābat. 9. Rōmulus cum lupā in silvā habitābat. 10. Puerī, amātisne fābulam dē puerō Rōmulō? 11. Oppidum validum cum servīs multīs aedificābātis. 12. Populō Rōmānō erant māgna oppida, lātī agrī, et multa aedificia.

98. 1. Master, we shall call your slaves. 2. I am calling my slaves with the boys. 3. Slaves, were you working in the fields with the master? 4. The boys will have many rewards; but they will not be free. 5. To a good farmer the fields will give pleasing gifts. 6. You will chase away the wolf and save the children. 7. Was the story about Romulus pleasing? 8. You were telling stories about the ancient wars.

LESSON XI

FIRST OR *ā* CONJUGATION (Continued)

PASSIVE VOICE: PRESENT SYSTEM

99. Learn the present, the imperfect, and the future indicative, and the present infinitive passive of **amō** (550).

(W. 175; B. 102; AG. 184; H. 208.)

(*a*) Notice that all the forms learned are based on the present stem **amā-**, and that the imperfect and the future indicative passive are formed with the same tense signs, -**bā**- and -**bi**- (-**b**-, -**be**-, -**bu**-),[1] as the corresponding tenses in the active.

100. The personal endings of the passive are:

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST	-r, -or	-mur
SECOND	-ris (-re)	-minī
THIRD	-tur	-ntur

(*a*) The ending -**r** is used in the first person singular of the imperfect, -**or** in the present and the future. Compare **91** *a*.

101. Inflect like **amor** the passive of **fugō, laudō, servō, vocō.**

102. 1. Amābam, amābar; vocābō, vocābor. 2. Laudātur, laudābātur, laudābitur. 3. Laudāminī, laudābiminī, laudābāminī. 4. Fugantur, fugābuntur, fugāris. 5. Vocābis, vocāberis, vocābāre.

103. 1. We shall be saved, they will be saved. 2. You will be saved, you are being saved. 3. They were being praised, they are being praised, they will be praised. 4. We are being saved, you will be saved. 5. They are being put to flight, we shall be called.

---

[1] The vowel following b in the future is variable, and changes according to the next letter in the word. It disappears entirely before vowels (-ō and -or), appears as e before r (-ris and -re), as u before nt (-nt and -ntur), and as i in all other places.

104. ABLATIVE OF AGENT

1. **Marcus amīcum servat.**	*Marcus saves (his) friend.*
2. **Ā Marcō amīcus servā-**	*The friend is being saved by*
tur.	*Marcus.*
3. **Dominus servum līberat.**	*The master sets free the slave.*
4. **Ā dominō servus līberā-**	*The slave is set free by (his)*
tur.	*master.*

(*a*) Notice that in changing from the active form to the passive, the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive, and that the subject of the active verb is shifted from the nominative to the ablative with the preposition **ā** (or **ab**[1]). Such an ablative with **ā** or **ab** tells who the doer or agent of the action is, and is called the *Ablative of Agent*.

105. RULE. — **The Agent with Passive Verbs is expressed by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*.**

(W. 379; B. 216; AG. 405; H. 468.)

106. VOCABULARY

ā, ab, prep. with abl. *by, from.*
appellō, -āre, *to call, name.*
diū, adv. *long, for a long time.*
expūgnō, -āre (ex + pūgnō), *to take by storm, capture.*
fortiter, adv. *bravely.*

incola, -ae, m. *inhabitant.*
mūrus, -ī, m. *wall.*
oppidānus, -ī, m. *a townsman.*
oppūgnō, -āre (ob + pūgnō), *to storm, attack.*
praesidium, -ī, n. *defence, protection.*

107. 1. Rōma ā Rōmulō aedificābātur. 2. Incolae oppidī Rōmānī appellantur. 3. Ā populō nōn dominī sed amīcī appellābimur. 4. Ab incolīs Rōmae semper amāberis. 5. Fābula dē Rōmulō puerīs ā magistrō narrābitur. 6. Puer parvus ā lupā servābātur et cūrābātur. 7. Mūrus, praesidium oppidī, ab oppidānīs aedificābitur. 8. In multīs

---

[1] **Ā** or **ab** is used before consonants, **ab** before vowels.

bellīs cum oppidānīs fortiter pūgnābāmus. 9. Rōma ab
cēterīs incolīs Ītaliae diū oppūgnābitur. 10. Sed oppidum
validum Rōmānōrum nōn expūgnātur.

108. 1. We shall be praised by the townsmen. 2. The
great town will be built by slaves. 3. The wall is being
built by the inhabitants of Rome. 4. We were giving help
and money to the unhappy townsmen. 5. They will fight
long and bravely.   6. You bravely stormed the walls, the
defences of the town. 7. The defences will not be taken
by storm by the Romans. 8. The inhabitants of Greece
fought long with the Romans.

LESSON XII

PERFECT SYSTEM OF *SUM*

109. Learn the perfect, the pluperfect, and the future
perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive of **sum (561)**.

(W. 173; B. 100; AG. 170; H. 205.)

(*a*) Notice that the perfect system of this verb is formed on a
different stem from that of the present system.

(*b*) Notice also that the personal endings of the pluperfect and
the future perfect are the same as those of the imperfect and the
future respectively. The tense signs are -erā- (plup.) and -er-,
-eri- (fut. perf.). The perfect has certain endings peculiar to itself.

110. The personal endings of the perfect indicative
active are shown in the following table :

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST	-ī	-imus
SECOND	-istī	-istis
THIRD	-it	-ērunt (-ēre)

111. 1. Fuistī, fuerās, fueris. 2. Fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint. 3. Fuit, fuerat, fuimus. 4. Fuī, fuerō, fuerātis. 5. Fuistis, fueram, fueritis.

112. 1. I have been, I shall have been. 2. I had been, they had been, they will have been. 3. He had been, he will have been, they have been. 4. We shall have been, we have been, we had been.

113.　　　　　　　VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, n. plur. *arms.*　　　inimicus, -ī, m. *enemy* (amīcus).
causa, -ae, f. *cause, reason.*　　　proelium, -ī, n. *battle.*
deus,[1] -ī, m. *god.*　　　　　　proximus, -a, -um, *next, nearest.*
Gallus, -ī, m. *a Gaul.*　　　　　sine, prep. with abl. *without.*
Gallia, -ae, f. *Gaul.*　　　　　templum, -ī, n. *temple.*

terra, -ae, f. *land, country, earth.*

114. 1. Rōmānī, in templīs deōrum fuistis. 2. Gallī inimīcī Rōmānōrum fuērunt. 3. Terra Gallōrum Gallia appellātur. 4. Gallia proxima Ītaliae[2] fuit. 5. Fuēruntne Gallīs multae causae bellī? 6. Gallī, pūgnābātisne in multīs proeliīs cum Rōmānīs? 7. Multa oppida Gallōrum ā Rōmānīs oppūgnābuntur. 8. Itaque oppidānī incolās proximī oppidī vocābunt. 9. Miserīs Gallīs in proeliō arma nōn fuerant. 10. Sine mūrīs validīs fuerātis; itaque nova praesidia aedificābātis.

115. 1. Men, you have been in arms. 2. Had you been in arms for a long time? 3. With the inhabitants we have been in the temple of the god. 4. The Gauls and the Romans had long been enemies. 5. Have the townsmen had a reason for war[3]? 6. The Romans stormed the nearest defences without reason. 7. In the land of the Gauls there have been many towns. 8. But the towns nearest Italy are being taken by storm.

---

[1] For peculiarities in the spelling of deus, see 530.
[2] Dative with proxima; as we in English say ' nearest to.'
[3] Compare 114, 5.

LESSON XIII

PERFECT SYSTEM OF *AMŌ*

116. Learn the perfect, the pluperfect, and the future perfect indicative, active and passive, of **amō** (**550**).

(W. 174, 175; B. 101, 102; AG. 184; H. 207, 208.)

(*a*) Notice that the perfect system in the active is formed from the perfect stem **amāv-**, which may be obtained by adding **v** to the present stem. The additions to this stem, by means of which the three perfect tenses are formed, are the same as those which were added to **fu-**, the perfect stem of **sum**.

(*b*) Notice that the perfect passive system is formed by using the perfect passive participle **amātus, -a, -um,** *loved, having been loved,* with the verb **sum** as an auxiliary. The present of **sum** is used to form the perfect **amātus sum,** the imperfect to form the pluperfect **amātus eram,** and the future to form the future perfect **amātus erō.**

117. The participle is formed by adding **-tus** to the present stem. It is declined like the adjective **bonus**, and agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case, exactly like a predicate adjective (**65**). For example :

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
MASC.	puer est amātus[1]	puerī sunt amātī
FEM.	puella est amāta	puellae sunt amātae
NEUT.	dōnum est amātum	dōna sunt amāta

118. 1. Amāvī, amātus sum, amātī sumus. 2. Amāvit, amāverat, amāverit. 3. Amāta es, amāta erās, amāta eris. 4. Amāvistis, amātī estis, amātī eritis. 5. Amāverō, amātus erō, amātus eram. 6. Amāta est, amātae erant, amāta erit. 7. Amātum erat, amāta sunt, amāta erunt. 8. Amāvistī, amāverās, amāveris. 9. Amāvērunt, amāverant, amāverint.

---

[1] The auxiliary **sum** may stand either before or after the participle.

119. 1. We loved, we had loved, we shall have loved. 2. We had been loved, you will have loved, we shall have been loved. 3. You had loved, you had been loved, he has been loved. 4. They have loved, they were loved, they had been loved.

120. VOCABULARY

amīcitia, -ae, f. *friendship, alliance* (amīcus).

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *neighboring.*

fīnitimī, -ōrum, m. plur. *neighbors.*

frūmentum, -ī, n. *grain.*

hasta, -ae, f. *spear.*

portō, -āre, *to carry, bring.*

victōria, -ae, f. *victory.*

121. 1. Gallī miserī cum inimīcīs pūgnāvērunt. 2. Incolae terrārum fīnitimārum Rōmānōs amīcōs appellāverant. 3. Oppidānī, vocāvistisne deōs in templīs? 4. Deōs vocāvimus, sed auxilium nōn dabunt. 5. Praesidia fīnitimōrum ā Rōmānīs fortiter expūgnāta erant. 6. In proeliīs cum Gallīs nōn fugātī erimus. 7. Incolae amīcī Rōmānōrum appellātī erant; itaque frūmentum portāverant. 8. Gallīs fuerant gladiī et hastae; sed oppidānī sine armīs fuerant. 9. Mūrōs oppidī fortiter oppūgnāvērunt; sed victōria diū erat dubia. 10. Fueritne amīcitia cum Rōmānīs? Portāvistisne multum frūmentum?

122. 1. Grain has been brought by the neighbors. 2. Had the friendship of the neighboring peoples been doubtful? 3. The slaves will have cared for the arms. 4. I shall be saved by the gods with my native land. 5. Friends, have you brought many spears and swords? 6. The defences of the town had been taken by storm without arms. 7. The story about the war has been told by the enemy. 8. The townsmen fought long with the inhabitants of the nearest country.

LESSON XIV

FIRST CONJUGATION : PRINCIPAL PARTS

123. The principal parts of a verb are forms chosen to show the three stems from which all other forms may be made by adding the proper endings. Besides the present indicative, they are the present infinitive, the perfect indicative, and the perfect passive participle. For example :

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Partic.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus
cūrō	cūrāre	cūrāvī	cūrātus
servō	servāre	servāvī	servātus

124. Form the principal parts of the following :

appellō, expūgnō, fugō, laudō, līberō, oppūgnō, portō, vocō.

(*a*) But the principal parts of dō are irregular : dō, dăre, dĕdī, dătus.

125. ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

1. **Gladiīs pūgnant.**	*They are fighting with swords.*
2. **Ōceanum ventō nāvigant.**	*They sail the sea by means of the wind.*
3. **Lupum armīs fugābant.**	*They put the wolf to flight with weapons.*

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives **gladiīs, ventō, armīs,** denote the *Means* or *Instrument* by which the action of the verb is performed. Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Means* or *Instrument*, and is generally translated *with* or *by*.

126. Rule. — **The Ablative is used to denote the Means or Instrument.**

(W. 386 ; B. 218 ; AG. 409 ; H. 476.)

127. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

1. **Puerī dōnō incitantur.** *The boys are urged on by the gift.*
2. **Marcus victōriā est laudātus.** *Marcus was praised because of his victory.*
3. **Dominus servōs industriā laudāvit.** *The master praised the slaves on account of their industry.*

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives **fābulā, victōriā,** and **industriā** answer the question *Why?* — that is, that they express the *Cause* of the action of the verb. Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Cause*, and may be translated by a variety of English phrases, as in the examples above.

128. RULE. — **The Ablative is used to denote Cause.**

(W. 384; B. 219; A.G. 404; H. 475.)

129. VOCABULARY

animus, -ī, m. *mind, courage, spirit.*

causā (abl. of **causa**), *for the sake of* (when preceded by a genitive).

cōpia, -ae, f. *plenty, abundance.*

cōpiae, -ārum, f. plur. *forces, troops.*

dīligentia, -ae, f. *carefulness, diligence.*

incitō, -āre, *to arouse, stir up.*

industria, -ae, f. *industry, zeal.*

inopia, -ae, f. *want, lack, scarcity.*

maximus, -a, -um,[1] *very large, largest, greatest.*

minimus, -a, -um,[1] *very small, smallest, least.*

odium, -ī, n. *hatred, dislike.*

superō, -āre, *to defeat, overcome.*

vāstō, -āre, *to lay waste, devastate.*

130. 1. Gallī odiō maximō incitātī sunt. 2. Cōpiae fīnitimōrum inopiā frūmentī superantur. 3. Līberī, dīligentiā et industriā laudābiminī. 4. Gallī cum Rōmānīs gladiīs et hastīs diū pūgnāverant. 5. Sacra templa deōrum ā Gallīs

---

[1] **Maximus** is the superlative of **māgnus**; **minimus** of **parvus.** Observe the meanings of the superlative carefully.

odiō vāstābuntur. 6. Inopiā frūmentī auxilium oppidānīs
dedērunt fīnitimī. 7. Oppidum ā Rōmānīs amīcōrum causā
expūgnātum est. 8. In oppidō erat maxima cōpia armōrum,
sed minima frūmentī. 9. Maximus erat animus Gallōrum;
sed agrī fīnitimōrum ā Rōmānīs vāstātī erant. 10. Amī-
citiae causā oppidānīs maximam cōpiam argentī dabimus.

131. 1. Will the house be cared for by your slaves?
2. For the sake of friendship you gave the wretched people
help. 3. The troops were aroused by the very small supply
of grain. 4. We shall not be defeated from lack of courage.
5. The townsmen will fight with very large swords. 6. You
had not been praised for diligence and industry. 7. The
Romans defeated (their) neighbors by means of very great
forces. 8. The inhabitants of the town had been put to
flight with long spears.

REVIEW OF LESSONS I–XIV[1]

132.   NOUNS

aedificium	causā	fīlia	incola
ager	cōpia	fīlius	industria
agricola	cōpiae	fīnitimī	inimīcus
amīcitia	cūra	frūmentum	inopia
amīcus	deus	Gallia	Ītalia
animus	dīligentia	Gallus	liber
argentum	dominus	gladius	līberī
arma	dōnum	Graecia	lupa
auxilium	epistula	hasta—	lupus
bellum	equus	herba	magister
campus	fābula	Horātius	Marcus
causa	fāma	hortus	mūrus

[1] These reviews may be used to form additional exercises to cover
those points in which the class needs further drill. A glance down
the lists of words will enable the pupil to see where he is weak or
strong, and will render it possible for him to make good his deficiencies
without loss of time.

Mūsa	poēta	Rōma	Tullia
nauta	populus	Rōmānus	via
ōceanus	praemium	Rōmulus	victōria
odium	praesidium	rosa	vīlicus—
oppidānus	proelium	servus	vīlla
oppidum	puella	silva	vir
patria	puer	templum	vīta
perīculum	rēgīna	terra	

133. ADJECTIVES

aeger sich,	grātus	meus	proximus
antīquus	lātus	minimus	pulcher
bonus	līber	miser	Rōmānus
cēterī	longus	multus	sacer —sacred
clārus	māgnus	niger	tener — tender, your
dubius	malus	novus	tuus
fīnitimus	maximus	parvus	validus

134. VERBS

aedificō	expūgnō	laudō	pūgnō
amō	fugō	līberō	servō
appellō	habet	narrō	sum
cūrō	habitō	nāvigō	superō
dō	incitō	oppūgnō	vāstō
errō	labōrō	portō	vocō

135. ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS

ā, ab	et	itaque	semper
cum	fortiter	-ne	sine
dē	ibi	nōn	ubi
diū	in	sed	

136. INFLECTIONS

Nouns in -a (First Declension).

Nouns in -us, -er, -ir, -um (Second Declension).

Adjectives in -us, -a, -um and -er, -a, -um.

The Indicative of sum.

The Indicative, Active and Passive, of amō (First Conjugation).

4

137. CONSTRUCTIONS

Subject.	Genitive of Possessor.
Direct Object.	Dative of Possessor (with **sum**).
Indirect Object.	Ablative of Place (**in**).
Predicate Nouns.	Ablative of Accompaniment (**cum**).
Appositives.	Ablative of Agent (**ā, ab**).
Agreement of Adjectives.	Ablative of Means.
Agreement of Verbs.	Ablative of Cause.

LESSON XV

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HĪC* AND *ILLE*

(W. 142, 143; B. 87; AG. 146; H. 178.)

138. Hīc, *this* Ille, *that*

	SINGULAR				SINGULAR		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.		MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	hīc	haec	hōc		ille	illa	illud
GEN.	hūius	hūius	hūius		illīus	illīus	illīus
DAT.	huic	huic	huic		illī	illī	illī
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hōc		illum	illam	illud
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc		illō	illā	illō

	PLURAL				PLURAL		
NOM.	hī	hae	haec		illī	illae	illa
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum		illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	hīs	hīs	hīs		illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	hōs	hās	haec		illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	hīs	hīs	hīs		illīs	illīs	illīs

(*a*) Notice that in the plural these pronouns follow closely the regular first and second declensions, but that in the singular they differ from them widely.

139. Both **hīc** and **ille** may be used alone as pronouns, or as pronominal adjectives in agreement with nouns.

(*a*) **Hīc** points out something which is near the speaker in time, place, thought, etc. : **hīc puer**, *this boy* (near me); **hī librī**, *these books* (by my side, or which I have just mentioned, etc.).

(*b*) **Ille** points out something which is remote in time, place, thought, etc., from the speaker : **ille vir**, *that man* (yonder, near him) ; **illī librī**, *those books* (over there, mentioned some time ago, etc.).

(*c*) When **ille** and **hīc** are contrasted in the same sentence they frequently mean *the former, the latter :* **Ille bonus, hīc malus est,** *The former is a good man, the latter bad.*

(*d*) **Ille** is sometimes used in the sense of *the well-known, the famous.* It then follows its noun.

140.

1. **Hīc ager est meus, ille tuus.**   *This field is mine, that yours.*

2. **Horātius et Marcus sunt Rōmānī ; ille poēta, hīc est agricola.**   *Horace and Marcus are Romans; the former is a poet, the latter a farmer.*

3. **Horātius, poēta ille, fuit clārus.**   *Horace, the well-known poet, was famous.*

141.   VOCABULARY

Belgae, -ārum, m. plu. *the Belgians.*

coniūrō, -āre, *to swear together, plot, conspire.*

contrā, prep. with acc. *against.*

Haeduī, -ōrum, m. plu. *the Haeduans* (a Gallic people).

inter, prep. with acc. *among, between.*

intereā, adv. *meanwhile.*

Nerviī, -ōrum, m. plu. *the Nervians* (a Belgian people).

numerus, -ī, m. *number.*

nunc, adv. *now.*

nūntiō, -āre, *to send news, report.*

pācō, -āre, *to pacify, subdue.*

parō, -āre, *to get ready, prepare.*

suus, -a, -um,[1] *his, her, its ; their.*

---

[1] **Suus** is used only when the possessor is the subject of the sentence.

142. 1. In illō proeliō Belgae Nerviōs pācāvērunt. 2. Hī cum cēterīs populīs contrā illōs coniūrābant. 3. Victōria nōn diū erat dubia; numerus illōrum minimus erat. 4. Haeduī fāmā proelī et odiō Rōmānōrum[1] incitātī erant. 5. Haec[2] Nerviīs ab amīcīs erant nūntiāta. 6. Rōmānus ille hōs miserōs fugāvit et agrōs lātōs vāstābit. 7. Servī inopiā incitātī sunt et nunc contrā dominōs suōs coniūrant. 8. Intereā Rōmānīs epistulae ab inimīcīs Nerviōrum datae sunt. 9. Minimus numerus Nerviōrum cum Haeduīs in hōc proeliō fortiter pūgnāvit. 10. Hī cōpiam armōrum parāverant, sed illī sine armīs erant. 11. Inter Haeduōs et Rōmānōs diū fuerat amīcitia; itaque illī hīs frūmentum dabant.

143. 1. Between the Haeduans and the Romans there will be very little friendship. 2. The latter are preparing their forces; the former have conspired with their neighbors. 3. Because of the scarcity of grain a great number have[3] been pacified. 4. This aid had been prepared for the sake of friendship. 5. These nearest fields are now being devastated because of the hatred for them.[4] 6. Meanwhile that famous people had conspired against their enemies. 7. The number of those Belgians was reported in many letters. 8. But the courage of the Romans was very great; these therefore prepared arms.

---

[1] The Latin uses here the genitive to represent the English objective case with *for* (*of*), when it modifies a noun (**odiō**).

[2] Neuter plural, *these things, this;* compare **79**, n. 1.

[3] In Latin the predicate agrees in number with the form of the subject. Here it would be singular.

[4] Compare **142**, 4; use a form of **ille**.

LESSON XVI

THE RELATIVE *QUĪ*

(W. 147; B. 89; AG. 147; H. 182.)

144. Quī, *who, which, what*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

145.

1. Ille quī laudātur est bonus. — *He who is praised is good.*

2. Horātius quem Rōmānī amābant poēta erat. — *Horace, whom the Romans loved, was a poet.*

3. Hōc est dōnum quod nautae datum est. — *This is the gift which was given to the sailor.*

4. Haec sunt dōna quae Marcus laudābat. — *These are the gifts which Marcus praised.*

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the relatives **quī, quem, quod, quae**, agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but that their cases are determined by the construction of the subordinate clauses in which they stand. Thus in sentences 1 and 3 **quī** and **quod** are the subjects of these clauses, and so happen to be in the same case as their antecedents. But in sentences 2 and 4 **quem** and **quae** are accusatives, objects of the verbs in the relative clauses, while their antecedents are both nominative.

146. RULE. — The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

(W. 299; B. 250; AG. 305; H. 396.)

147. 1. Cōpia hastārum novārum quae parātur est maxima. 2. Hī, quōs Rōmānus ille pācāvit, Belgae sunt. 3. Ille populus, cūius agrōs vāstāvimus, fortiter pūgnābit. 4. Nerviī, quōrum amīcitia est dubia, ā populō Rōmānō pācābuntur. 5. Gallīs, quī industriā et dīligentiā laudantur, maxima praemia dabimus. 6. Gallōs, quibus minima cōpia hastārum erat, in proeliō fugābam. 7. Inter fīnitimōs et Belgās, ā quibus oppidum oppūgnābātur, amīcitia nōn erat. 8. Hī odiō illōrum quōs ibi superāverant, agrōs et aedificia vāstāvērunt. 9. Dē hōc proeliō, in quō cēterī Gallī pācātī sunt, multae epistulae portābantur. 10. Hāc victōriā, quā maximus numerus Rōmānōrum fugātus est, incitātī sumus.

148. 1. The spears with which the Belgians fight now are long. 2. Those fields which are being devastated by the Romans are not very near. 3. This grain which was given the townsmen had been prepared in your country. 4. In this forest my friends, who fought bravely, were defeated. 5. Neighbors, you were defeated by lack of arms, which you had not prepared. 6. By this victory I shall put those to flight whose friends have conspired against the Roman people. 7. The former had been incited by hatred against their neighbors; the latter had subdued many Haeduans.

LESSON XVII

THE INTERROGATIVE *QUIS* (*QUĬ*)

(W. 148; B. 90; AG. 148; H. 183, 184.)

149.   Quis?   *Who?   Which?   What?*
              Quĭ?   *What?   What kind of?*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quŏ	quā	quŏ	quibus	quibus	quibus

150.

1. Quis labŏrat?	*Who is working?*
2. Quī vir labŏrat?	*What (What kind of) man is working?*
3. Quid portat ille?	*What is he carrying?*
4. Quod praemium portat ille?	*What reward is he carrying?*

(*a*) Notice that in sentences 1 and 3 **quis** and **quid** are used
without a noun, *i.e.* as substantives; they are therefore called sub-
stantive forms of the interrogative.   In sentences 2 and 4 **quī** and
quod agree with the nouns **vir** and **praemium** and are called ad-
jective forms of the interrogative.[1]   All the other forms of the
interrogative are used both as substantives and adjectives.   Com-
pare the declension of the interrogative with that of the relative
in the preceding lesson, and notice where they differ.

---

[1] This distinction between substantive and adjective forms was not
always observed by Roman writers in the case of the masculine **quis**
and **quī**; but the beginner should make the distinction in translating
the exercises of this book, both in the masculine and the neuter.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*

(W. 144; B. 87; AG. 146; H. 181.)

151.   Is, *that, he*

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

(*a*) Notice the similarity in the declension of **is, hīc,** and **ille.**

(*b*) **Is,** *that,* is in meaning like **ille,** but less definite; it often means simply *he, she, it,* and is very common as an antecedent of **quī: is quī oppidum expūgnāvit,** *he who stormed the town;* **ea quae portāvit,** *the things which he brought.*

152.   VOCABULARY

ad, prep. with acc. *to, toward, near.*

castra, -ōrum, n. plu. *a fortified camp.*

convocō, -āre, *call together, assemble.*

exspectō, -āre, *to look out for, wait for, expect.*

hīc, *here;* **hūc,** *hither;* **hinc,** *hence.*

idōneus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable.*

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *to help.*

locus,[1] **-ī,** m. *place.*

nātūra, -ae, f. *nature.*

optimus, -a, -um, *best.*

parātus, -a, -um, *ready, prepared.*

praeda, -ae, f. *booty.*

properō, -āre, *to hurry, hasten.*

153. 1. Quis contrā suōs amīcōs coniūrāvit? 2. Quod dōnum erit malīs puerīs[2] idōneum? 3. Quī sunt eī quī argentō pācātī sunt? 4. Quā dē causā[3] erant[4] Nerviī contrā

---

[1] The plural is neuter, **loca, -ōrum.**

[2] Dative with **idōneus**; use *for.*

[3] *for what reason, why?*

[4] The forms of **sum** are frequently thus separated in position from the perfect participles to which they belong grammatically.

Rōmānōs incitātī? 5. Eī quī ad castra properant odiō populī Rōmānī incitātī sunt. 6. Quī cum cōpiīs properābant ad agrōs eōrum quī convocābantur? 7. Eī Gallī quī frūmentō et armīs Rōmānōs iuvant, proximī patriae meae sunt. 8. Eī Nerviī quī nātūrā optimī sunt, intereā maximā cum praedā ad castra properābunt. 9. Nerviī cōpiās in eō locō quī nātūrā castrīs idōneus est, diū exspectābunt. 10. Hī victōriae et praedae causā, illī inopiā frūmentī oppidum expūgnant. 11. A quibus erant ea Rōmānīs nūntiāta? Ab eīs quī ad locum idōneum convocātī erant.

154. 1. Who aids the unhappy Romans with grain? 2. For what reason did the Belgians hurry to the camp? 3. What place will be suitable for a camp? 4. Those Gauls who were called together were the best friends. 5. Will they wait for their own friends in a place which is suitable by nature? 6. By whom had the very great supply of arms been prepared? 7. We shall aid a very small number of those who are not ready. 8. To what camp will the Gauls carry that booty?

LESSON XVIII

ADVERBS OF PLACE

155. Commit to memory the following table:

hīc, *here.*	hūc, *hither.*	hinc, *hence.*
illīc, *there.*	illūc, illō, *thither.*	illinc, *thence.*
ibi, *there.*	eō, *thither.*	inde, *thence.*
ubi, *where* (rel. and interrog.).	quō, *whither* (rel. and interrog.).	unde, *whence* (rel. and interrog.).

(*a*) Notice that the adverbs **hīc, illīc,** and **ibi** correspond to the pronouns **hīc, ille,** and **is.** The interrogative and relative adverb **ubi** corresponds to **quis** and **quī.**

156. Review the declension of **hīc, ille, is; quī;** and **quis.**

157.　　　　ABLATIVE OF MANNER

1. **Puer cum dīligentiā la-**　　*The boy works with care.*
   bŏrat.
2. **Puer māgnā cum dīligentiā**　*The boy works with great care.*
   labŏrat.
3. **Puer māgnā dīligentiā la-**　*The boy works with great care.*
   bŏrat.

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives answer the question, *How?* That is, they tell the manner in which the boy works. Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of Manner.*

(*b*) Notice also that when the ablative is modified by an adjective, **cum** may or may not be used.

158. RULE. — **The manner of an action is expressed by the Ablative, usually with** *cum;* **but if the Ablative is modified by an adjective,** *cum* **need not be used.**

(W. 390; B. 220; AG. 412; H. 473 : 3.)

159.　　　　VOCABULARY

absum, abesse, āfuī (ab + sum), *to be distant, be away* (with **ā, ab,** and the abl.).

comparō, -āre, *to get ready, get together* (**parō**).

concilium, -ī, n. *conference, meeting, council.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n. *plan, advice, design.*

iam,[1] adv. *now, already, at last.*

in, prep. with acc. *into.*

lēgātus, -ī, m. *envoy, ambassador, lieutenant.*

longē, adv. *far* (**longus**).

mora, -ae, f. *delay.*

nam, conj. *for.*

noster, -tra, -trum, *our* (compare **meus**).

postulō,[2] **-āre,** *to demand, ask for.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *the remaining, the rest of.*

socius, -ī, m. *ally.*

summus, -a, -um, *highest, most eminent, greatest.*

vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (when more than one is addressed; compare **tuus**).

---

[1] **Iam** means *now, at last, already,* while **nunc** means *now, at the present time.*　　　[2] The person asked is in the abl. with **ā, ab.**

160. 1. Quis sociōrum vestrōrum concilium hūc convocābit? 2. Quō cōnsiliō oppidānōs, amīcōs suōs, iūvērunt? 3. Lēgātus ille sociōs nostrōs summā cum dīligentiā illīc cūrābit. 4. Nam ea castra in quae iam properābant cōpiae, nōn longē aberant. 5. In eō locō, quī nōn longē abest ab oppidō nostrō, nunc exspectāminī. 6. Maximā cūrā iam ibi comparāmus frūmentum quod reliquī sociī postulābunt. 7. Lēgātīne vestrī, quī hīc parātī erant, sine morā nostrīs[1] auxilium dedērunt? 8. Hōc cōnsilium, quod eī ab lēgātīs vestrīs datum est, reliquīs Gallīs nūntiābō. 9. Nam illī in locō castrīs idōneō summā industriā frūmentum comparābant. 10. Eōs quī nōn longē ab nostrīs praedam exspectābant, armīs nōn iuvābant sociī.

161. 1. Who was the envoy of your friends? 2. What advice was given our men by the allies? 3. The slaves worked in the fields with the greatest industry. 4. The rest of the Gauls brought thither with care the grain which we had demanded. 5. In that council which we called, the best advice was given this man. 6. Where did you get grain ready? Why do you not hurry there[2] without delay? 7. In those places which are not far from our camp, there is the greatest lack of grain. 8. For what reason are these envoys bringing arms here (hither) with evil mind?

LESSON XIX

THIRD DECLENSION

162. The stem ends in a consonant or **i.**

All consonant stems may be found by dropping the ending -**is** of the genitive singular : **prīncip-is, rēg-is.**

Consonant stems are divided into mute, liquid, and nasal stems, according to the nature of the final consonant. Mute stems end in **b, p; c, g; d, t.**

---

[1] **Nostrī** (masculine plural) is frequently used as a substantive, *our men.*   [2] I.e., *thither.*

MUTE STEMS

(W. 76–78; B. 30–33; AG. 57–59; H. 96–98.)

163.	Prīnceps, m.	Dux, m.	Rēx, m.	Mīles, m.
	chief	*leader*	*king*	*soldier*
STEM	prīncip-	duc-	rēg-	mīlit-

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	prīnceps	dux	rēx	mīles
GEN.	prīncipis	ducis	rēgis	mīlitis
DAT.	prīncipī	ducī	rēgī	mīlitī
ACC.	prīncipem	ducem	rēgem	mīlitem
ABL.	prīncipe	duce	rēge	mīlite

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	prīncipēs	ducēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs
GEN.	prīncipum	ducum	rēgum	mīlitum
DAT.	prīncipibus	ducibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus
ACC.	prīncipēs	ducēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs
ABL.	prīncipibus	ducibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus

(*a*) Notice that the nominative singular of these nouns ends in -s. Stems in **p** retain their final consonant unchanged before this ending : **prīnceps** ; when stems end in **c** or **g**, the final consonant combines with -s to form **x** : (duc-s) **dux**, (rēg-s) **rēx** ; but stems ending in **t** drop their final consonant before -s of the nominative : (mīlit-s) **mīles**.

(*b*) Notice also that when the last vowel of the stem is short, it is sometimes changed in the nominative singular : **mīlit-, mīles,** etc.

Observe these changes carefully in each word.

164. Make a list of the terminations and commit it to memory.

Decline together : **hīc prīnceps ; rēx ille ; quī mīles.**

165.

ante, prep. with acc. *before.*

comes, comitis, m. and f. *companion, attendant.*

coniūnx, coniugis, f. *consort, wife.*

dux, ducis, m. *leader.*

eques, equitis, m. *horseman* (**equus**).

iūdex, iūdicis, m. *judge.*

lūx, lūcis, f. *light.*

mīles, mīlitis, m. *soldier.*

pāx, pācis, f. *peace* (**pācō**).

pedes, peditis, m. *foot-soldier.*

prīmus, -a, -um, *first.*

prīnceps, prīncipis, m. *chief, leader.*

rēx, rēgis, m. *king.*

ultimus, -a, -um, *farthest, most remote.*

166. 1. Eī quī illīc coniūrābant, erant prīncipēs Galliae. 2. Marce, comitēs tuī illī virō dē cōnsiliō haec nūntiāvērunt. 3. Concilium ducum et rēgum in ultima loca convocābāmus. 4. Ante lūcem coniūnx rēgis, quae appellātur rēgīna, cum līberīs eō ad lēgātum properāvit. 5. Inter servōs rēgis et mīlitēs meōs deī erunt optimī iūdicēs. 6. Hīc quī prīmus iūdex fuerat inter mīlitēs et incolās oppidī, optimus rēx erat. 7. Pācis causā hī ducēs Galliae nunc māgnā cum industriā nostrōs iuvant. 8. Hinc prīmā lūce[1] equitēs epistulam ad coniugem iūdicis portāvērunt. 9. Comitēs meī, oppūgnābātisne pācis causā ante lūcem praesidia oppidī? 10. Prīncipēs Galliae, cūius equitēs sunt eī quī nōn longē ab oppidō vestrō absunt? 11. Intereā peditēs expūgnābunt eum locum ubi mīlitēs vestrī castra aedificāvērunt.

167. 1. The leaders of the horsemen hastened to the council. 2. Before light the foot-soldiers were building the first walls. 3. The chiefs of the Nervii with (their) wives and children were being assembled in the farthest towns. 4. These soldiers will be the king's companions, and will await him here. 5. The first plan of the foot-

---

[1] **prīmā lūce**, *at daybreak.*

soldiers was announced to the king by the judge. 6. My companions, who will carry this booty to the remotest places? 7. At daybreak the remaining horsemen put them to flight.

LESSON XX

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

MUTE STEMS (*Continued*)

168.	Obses, m. and f.	Virtūs, f.	Caput, n.
	hostage	*manliness*	*head*
STEM	obsid-	virtūt-	capit-

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	obses	virtūs	caput
GEN.	obsidis	virtūtis	capitis
DAT.	obsidī	virtūtī	capitī
ACC.	obsidem	virtūtem	caput
ABL.	obside	virtūte	capite

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	obsidēs	virtūtēs	capita
GEN.	obsidum	virtūtum	capitum
DAT.	obsidibus	virtūtibus	capitibus
ACC.	obsidēs	virtūtēs	capita
ABL.	obsidibus	virtūtibus	capitibus

(*a*) Notice the manner in which the nominatives of **obses** and **virtūs** are formed, and compare them with the similar nouns in the preceding lesson.

(*b*) Notice that the nominative of the neuter **caput** is the simple stem with the second vowel changed from ĭ to ŭ. Compare the nominatives and accusatives of this noun with those of the neuters in the second declension (**57 a**).

169. VOCABULARY

audācia, -ae, f. *boldness, bravery.*

caput, capitis, n. *head.*

celeriter, adv. *quickly, speedily.*

laus, laudis, f. *praise, glory.*

obses, obsidis, m. and f. *hostage.*

per, prep. with acc. *through.*

prō, prep. with abl. *for, in be-*
half of.

quiēs, quiētis, f. *quiet, rest.*

salūs, salūtis, f. *safety.*

servitūs, servitūtis, f. *slavery*
(servus).

virtūs, virtūtis, f. *manliness,*
courage (vir).

vōx, vōcis, f. *voice, cry.*

170. 1. Lēgātī māgnā cum audāciā obsidēs postulābant.
2. Prīncipēs eōrum quī in servitūte fuerant, prō vītā pūgnā-
bant. 3. In eō locō, quī nōn longē abest, erit rēgī quiēs et
salūs. 4. Haec dux māgnā vōce nūntiābit et lēgātōs hinc
ad concilium convocābit. 5. Dē virtūte peditum quī per
ultimās terrās properāvērunt, cēterī narrābant. 6. Hīs
multa dōna dedimus; sed optimum praemium erit laus rēgis.
7. Haeduōrum dux erat caput illōrum quī prīmī contrā
prīncipēs summā virtūte coniūrāverant. 8. Quiētis causā
lēgātī in loca quae ā reliquīs Gallīs longē aberant, celeriter
properāverant. 9. Prō salūte coniugum et līberōrum Rō-
mānīs prīncipēs et ducēs vestrōs obsidēs dedistis. 10. Nōn
parva erit laus hōrum, quī summā audāciā pācem et quiētem
postulāvērunt.

171. 1. The leaders of your allies will demand the chief
men as hostages.[1] 2. These Belgians, who had long been
free, were now in slavery. 3. For the safety of their
wives and children, they will help our soldiers. 4. But
they will not save the heads of those who demanded peace
in the council. 5. You will bring the booty hither with
speed through the nearest lands. 6. The companions of
the king were the first to call[2] the soldiers with a loud[3] cry.
7. At daybreak[4] the best soldiers hurried with the greatest
bravery thence into the farthest lands.

---

[1] Compare 170, 9. [2] Compare 170, 7. [3] I.e., *great.* [4] Compare 166, 8.

LESSON XXI

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

LIQUID AND NASAL STEMS

172. The stems end in -l, -r, or -n.

(W. 79–81; B. 34–36; AG. 61–64; H. 99–101.)

	Cōnsul, m. consul	Victor, m. victor	Homō, m. and f. man	Nōmen, n. name	Corpus, n. body
STEM	cōnsul-	victōr-	homin-	nōmin-	corpor-[1]

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	cōnsul	victor	homō	nōmen	corpus
GEN.	cōnsulis	victōris	hominis	nōminis	corporis
DAT.	cōnsulī	victōrī	hominī	nōminī	corporī
ACC.	cōnsulem	victōrem	hominem	nōmen	corpus
ABL.	cōnsule	victōre	homine	nōmine	corpore

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	hominēs	nōmina	corpora
GEN.	cōnsulum	victōrum	hominum	nōminum	corporum
DAT.	cōnsulibus	victōribus	hominibus	nōminibus	corporibus
ACC.	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	hominēs	nōmina	corpora
ABL.	cōnsulibus	victōribus	hominibus	nōminibus	corporibus

(*a*) Notice how the neuter nouns **nōmen** and **corpus** differ in the formation of their nominatives from the masculine and feminine nouns with corresponding stems.

173. OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

1. **Amor patriae.** — *Love of (for) country.*
2. **Timōre mīlitum pūgnant.** — *Because of their fear of the soldiers, they are fighting.*
3. **Avidī laudis erant Gallī.** — *The Gauls were eager for praise.*

---

[1] Inasmuch as sibilant stems appear as stems in -r, they are for the sake of simplicity treated as liquid stems in this book.

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the genitives **patriae, mīlitum, laudis**, are the objects of the feeling expressed in the nouns **amor, timōre**, and the adjective **avidī**. Such a genitive is called an *Objective Genitive*. Cases of it have already occurred (**142**, n. 1).

174. RULE. — **The Genitive is used with certain nouns and adjectives to denote the Object of the action or feeling expressed by them.**

(W. 351, 352; B. 200, 204; AG. 348, 349; H. 440 : 2, 450.)

175. VOCABULARY

adpropinquō, -āre, *to approach* (with dat. case).

amor, amōris, m. *love.*

apud, prep. with the acc. *with, among.*

arbor, arboris, f. *tree.*

avidus, -a, -um, *desirous of, eager.*

clāmor, clāmōris, m. *shout, noise* (of shouting).

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m. *consul.*

corpus, corporis, n. *body.*

homō, hominis, m. and f. *human being, man.*

honor, honōris, m. *honor.*

iter, itineris, n. *journey, march, route.*

labor, labōris, m. *work, toil.*

neque (nec) . . . neque (nec),[1] *neither . . . nor.*

nōmen, nōminis, n. *name.*

timor, timōris, m. *fear.*

victor, victōris, m. *victor;* adj. *victorious* (**victōria**).

vulnus, vulneris, n. *wound.*

176. 1. Māgnus erat huic hominī amor laudis. 2. Inde maximō mīlitum clāmōre et labōre castrīs adpropinquat cōnsul. 3. Hī, quī avidī morae nōn erant, sine timōre eō adpropinquābant. 4. Iter obsidum erat per agrōs sociōrum ubi arborēs multae erant. 5. Nam illī hominēs, quī timōre victōrum fugātī erant, campōs iam vāstābant. 6. Sed apud inimīcōs suōs erat comes rēgis, cui nōmen erat Marcus. 7. Itaque ille vir amīcus Rōmānōrum appellābātur, apud quōs summō in honōre erat. 8. Belgīs māgna corpora sunt; quā dē causā[2] nostrīs multa vulnera celeriter dabunt.

---

[1] **Neque** is generally used before vowels and words beginning with c or g; **nec**, in other situations.   [2] Compare **153, 4.**

5

9. Gallī victōrēs odiō servitūtis et praedae causā mūrīs adpropinquant. 10. Hominēs nātūrā avidī laudis et honōris sunt; itaque nec vulneribus nec labōribus fugābimur. 11. Neque amōre honōris neque odiō comitum contrā cōnsulem vestrum incitābāmur.

177. 1. The victors, eager for battle, approached the remaining soldiers. 2. Because of their love for the consul, the townsmen hurried into the camp. 3. Did the gods live in those sacred buildings which were called temples? 4. The journey thither through these lands is long; but the labor of the men is very small. 5. From fear of slavery you will neither give hostages nor wait for a doubtful victory. 6. We shall be quickly defeated by these soldiers, for they do not have wounds. 7. For the sake of safety and rest, the judges will hurry to the victor.

LESSON XXII

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

Stems in *i*

178.   MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

(W. 82, 83; B. 37–39; AG. 66–69; H. 102, 103.)

	Cīvis, m. *citizen*	Hostis, m. and f. *enemy*	Caedēs, f. *slaughter*
STEM	cīvi-	hosti-	caedi-
		SINGULAR	
NOM., VOC.	cīvis	hostis	caedēs
GEN.	cīvis	hostis	caedis
DAT.	cīvī	hostī	caedī
ACC.	cīvem	hostem	caedem
ABL.	cīve, -ī	hoste	caede

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	cīvēs	hostēs	caedēs
GEN.	cīvium	hostium	caedium
DAT.	cīvibus	hostibus	caedibus
ACC.	cīvīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	caedīs, -ēs
ABL.	cīvibus	hostibus	caedibus

(a) Notice that the singular of **hostis** and **caedēs** differs from that of consonant stems only in the nominative, but that the plural differs in the genitive and the accusative.

(b) Not many nouns of frequent occurrence belong to this class. The most common of those declined like **cīvis** are **fīnis**, m. *end*, **īgnis**, m. *fire*, and **turris**, f. *tower*, but the ablative in -ī is not common except in **īgnis** and **turris**.

(c) **Turris** has also the accusative singular **turrim**.

179.   NEUTER NOUNS

Mare, n. *sea*   **Animal**, n. *creature*

STEM **mari-**   **animāli-**

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM., VOC.	mare	maria	animal	animālia
GEN.	maris	——[1]	animālis	animālium
DAT.	marī	maribus	animālī	animālibus
ACC.	mare	maria	animal	animālia
ABL.	marī	maribus	animālī	animālibus

(a) Notice that neuter nouns of this class have only -ī in the ablative singular, and always -ia in the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural.

180. To the class of **i-** stems belong:

1. Nouns of the third declension ending in **is** or **-ēs**, mostly feminine, which do not increase in the genitive.[2]

2. Neuters ending in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**.

---

[1] The genitive plural of **mare** is found but once, and then has the form **marum**.

[2] That is, which have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative singular.

181.   VOCABULARY

animal, animālis, n. *living creature, animal.*

caedēs, caedis, f. *slaughter.*

cīvis, cīvis, m. and f. *citizen.*

classis, classis, f. *fleet.*

collis, collis, m. *hill.*

fīnis, fīnis, m. *end;* plur. *boundaries, territory.*

hostis, hostis, m. and f. *enemy.*

īgnis, īgnis, m. *fire.*

iuvenis,[1] **iuvenis,** m. *youth, young man.*

mare, maris, n. *sea.*

moenia, moenium, n. plur. *walls, ramparts* (of a town).

nāvis, nāvis, f. *ship* (**nāvigō, nauta**).

sīgnum, -ī, n. *signal, sign, standard.*

turris, turris, f. *tower.*

182. 1. Māgna erat caedēs cīvium quōs hostēs illīc superāvērunt.   2. In fīnibus hostium īgnēs parātī sunt quibus sīgnum dabimus.   3. In eō colle erant multa animālia, quae clāmōre iuvenum fugāta sunt.   4. In validīs nāvibus multī iuvenēs sine timōre moenibus adpropinquābunt.   5. Hīc et illīc erant arborēs lātae et aedificia, ubi incolae habitābant. 6. Classis vestra, cūius dux est cōnsul, mare sine timōre nāvigat.   7. Ante moenia turrēs erant aedificātae in quibus cīvēs summā audāciā hostīs exspectābunt.   8. In turrī, quae in colle ante oppidum erat, contrā hostīs parātī erāmus.   9. Ante lūcem iuvenēs, quī amōre patriae incitantur, māgnā caede obsidēs iam līberāverant.   10. Inter antīqua moenia et mare sunt aedificia quō cīvīs timōre servitūtis convocāvistī.

183. 1. Within the king's territory are hills and beautiful trees.   2. On these hills the enemy had prepared many fires.   3. With the fires we shall quickly give the signal to our soldiers.   4. With the ships which the consul built, you will sail the sea with boldness.   5. The citizens were incited by their love of praise, and freed the famous leader. 6. In this fleet were many young men who were eager for peace.   7. On[2] the march through the territory of the

---

[1] Gen. plur. **iuvenum.**   [2] in with the abl.

Belgians, the horsemen put many animals to flight. 8. The slaughter of the allies was not great, for they fought with the greatest bravery.

LESSON XXIII

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

MIXED STEMS

(W. 84; B. 40; AG. 104, 105; H. 70–72.)

184.

	Arx, f. *citadel*	Urbs, f. *city*	Cliēns, m. *client* ·
STEM	arc(i)-	urb(i)-	client(i)-

SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	arx	urbs	cliēns
Gen.	arcis	urbis	clientis
Dat.	arcī	urbī	clientī
Acc.	arcem	urbem	clientem
Abl.	arce	᾿urbe	cliente

PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	arcēs	urbēs	clientēs
Gen.	arcium	urbium	clientium
Dat.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus
Acc.	arcēs, -īs	urbēs, -īs	clientēs, -īs
Abl.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus

(*a*) Notice that these nouns are declined like consonant stems in the singular, but have the peculiarities of -i stems in the plural.

185. To the class of mixed stems belong :

1. Most monosyllables in -s and -x preceded by a consonant, as **arx**, **urbs**, etc.

2. Most nouns in -ns and -rs, as **cliēns**, **cohors**, etc.

186.   VOCABULARY

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.*

arx, arcis, f. *citadel.*

celeritās, celeritātis, f. *speed,*
   swiftness.

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f. *state, citi-*
   zenship (cīvis).

cliēns, clientis, m. *client.*

cohors, cohortis, f. *cohort.*[1]

et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

flūmen, flūminis, n. *river.*

gēns, gentis, f. *clan, family,*
   tribe.

legiō, legiōnis, f. *legion.*[2]

mōns, montis, m. *mountain, hill.*

mors, mortis, f. *death.*

pars, partis, f. *part.*

pōns, pontis, m. *bridge.*

rīpa, rīpae, f. *bank* (of a stream).

urbs, urbis, f. *city.*

187. 1. Inter hostīs erant iuvenēs quī clientēs cōnsulis
fuerant.   2. Intereā clientēs longīs nāvibus[3] ad rīpam
flūminis portābam.   3. Eques cohortibus, quae in arce
montis arma comparāverant, sīgnum dedit.   4. Illae legiōnes
nec timōre mortis neque inopiā frūmentī superantur.
5. Unde gentēs moenibus adpropinquāverant ubi aegra
corpora eōrum cūrābantur?   6. In hāc cīvitāte sunt pul-
chrae urbēs, in quibus multum frūmentum comparāvistī.
7. Ante arcem, quae in colle erat, cohortēs summā celeri-
tāte pontem aedificābant.   8. Nam et ibi et in montibus
hostīs māgnā cum audāciā exspectābātis.   9. Prō salūte
tenerārum coniugum pars legiōnum pūgnābit; sed pars iam
superātur.   10. Iam neque quiēs nec pāx in eā parte erat,
sed bellum parābās.

188. 1. In what state did you get together the legion of
young men?   2. Whither have the tribes wandered with
their clients?   3. The cities and towns of the Gauls were
on high hills and mountains.   4. On the bank of the
river I built a fleet with great speed.   5. The slaughter
here was great of both the Roman cohorts and the enemy.

---

[1] A military body of 300–360 men.   [2] A force of ten **cohortēs.**
[3] **longae nāvēs,** *ships-of-war.*

6. My citizens, in that place you awaited battle and death without fear. 7. The victor carried his booty in the ships-of-war which were before the walls. 8. The foot-soldiers will take by storm both the bridge and the tower which we are building here.

LESSON XXIV

REVIEW OF THIRD DECLENSION

189. Review these nouns used in Lessons XIX–XXIII.

MASCULINE

amor	cōnsul	honor	labor	pōns
cīvis	dux	hostis	mīles	prīnceps
clāmor	eques	īgnis	mōns	rēx
cliēns	fīnis	iūdex	obses	timor
collis	homō	iuvenis	pedes	victor
comes				

FEMININE

arbor	classis	legiō	pāx	turris
arx	cohors	lūx	quiēs	urbs
caedēs	coniūnx	mors	salūs	virtūs
celeritās	gēns	nāvis	servitūs	vōx
cīvitās	laus	pars		

NEUTER

animal	corpus	iter	moenia	vulnus
caput	flūmen	mare	nōmen	

190. The following rules will help to fix the gender of a majority of the nouns of the third declension, but it is important and easy to learn the gender of each noun when it is first met.

(1) Masculine are nouns in -ō, -or, -ōs, -er, and -ĕs (gen. -itis, -idis).

(2) Feminine are nouns in -ās, -ūs, -ēs, -is ; -x and -s (after a consonant); -dō, and collective and abstract nouns in -iō.

(3) Neuter are nouns in -e, -l, -n, -t; -ŭs.

(a) These rules are of course subordinate to the general rules (25).

(b) In the lists given above see how many nouns are exceptions to these rules.

191. 1. Obsidēs quōs postulāverāmus iam parātī sunt. 2. Nautae, ōceanum nāvigābitis in nāvibus quās cīvēs aedificābant. 3. Gallī amōre praedae summā celeritāte illūc convocantur. 4. Quis pūgnābit prō deīs quōrum templa ā cohortibus vāstantur? 5. In monte altō sīgna īgnibus dedistī; inde cum clāmōre victōrēs properābunt. 6. Clientēs miserī, apud hās gentēs in agrīs labōrātis. 7. Dux ille, cui nōmen est Marcus, semper avidus laudis et honōris erit. 8. Multae cīvitātēs et urbēs, quārum cīvēs in servitūte erant, ā cohortibus tuīs līberātae sunt. 9. Ante moenia urbis fugāvistis illōs hominēs quōrum corpora sunt maxima. 10. In rīpā flūminis, ubi pōns fuerat, pars cohortis classem comparābat; pars in urbem iam properāverat.

192. 1. The heads of those animals are large, the remaining part small. 2. In the citadel of their state we shall be aided by the cohorts. 3. You have given the signal by the fires which are on the mountain. 4. Which are the ships on which the judges were brought with (their) clients? 5. On the bank of the river you will await the fleet without fear. 6. You have helped my clients with the booty which you brought into our territory. 7. The slaughter was very great, for the state was aroused by the young men's wounds.

LESSON XXV

ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF TIME

193.   ACCUSATIVE OF TIME

1. **Longam aestātem labōrat.** *He works through the long summer.*
2. **Septem noctēs oppidum oppūgnābat.** *He attacked the town for seven nights.*

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the accusatives **longam aestātem, septem noctēs** answer the question, *How long?* That is, they express the time through which the action of the verb continues. Such an accusative is called an *Accusative of Duration of Time.*

194. RULE. — **Duration of Time is expressed by the Accusative.**

(W. 324; B. 181; AG. 423; H. 417.)

195.   ABLATIVE OF TIME

1. **Hieme noctēs sunt longae.** *In winter the nights are long.*
2. **Prīmā lūce oppidum oppūgnābunt.** *At daybreak they will attack the town.*
3. **Septem annīs Gallōs pācāvit.** *Within seven years he has subdued the Gauls.*

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives **hieme, prīmā lūce, septem annīs,** answer the questions, *When? Within what time?* Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of Time at Which* or *within Which.*

196. RULE. — **The Time at Which or within Which an action takes place is expressed by the Ablative.**

(W. 406, 407; B. 230, 231; AG. 423; H. 486, 487.)

197.   VOCABULARY

aestās, -ātis, f. *summer*.

annus, -ī, m. *year*.

cōnfīrmō, -āre, *to make firm, es-*
   tablish.

continuus, -a, -um, *consecutive,*
   in succession.

ē, ex,[1] prep. with abl. *out of,*
   from.

Germānī, -ōrum, m. plur. *Ger-*
   mans.

hiemō, -āre, *to spend the winter*.

hiems, -mis, f. *winter*.

hōra, -ae, f. *hour*.

nox, noctis, f. *night*.

septem (indeclinable [2]), *seven*.

septimus, -a, -um, *seventh*.

tempus, -oris, n. *time*.

tertius, -a, -um, *third*.

trāns, prep. with acc. *across*.

vēr, vēris, n. *spring*.

vigilia, -ae, f. *watch* (a fourth of the night).

198. 1. Prīmā lūce legiōnēs in arcem vocābō; ibi gentēs
exspectābimus. 2. Septimō annō pācem inter clientēs Gal-
lōrum et Rōmānōs cōnfīrmābō. 3. Hōrās continuās septem
legiōnēs māgnā cum caede oppidum oppūgnābant. 4. Illī
per fīnīs suōs nocte properāverant et prīmā lūce flūminī ad-
propinquābant. 5. Eō tempore annī Germānī fīnīs Gallō-
rum, quī trāns flūmen sunt, vāstāvērunt. 6. Tertiā aestāte
gentēs et cīvitātēs Germānōrum nāvibus in Galliam portāvī.
7. Prīmā vigiliā haec caedēs nūntiāta est eīs cīvitātibus quae
trāns montēs sunt. 8. Eā aestāte animōs clientium cōn-
fīrmāvistī; sed proximō annō timōre mortis fugātī sunt.
9. Tertiō annō gentēs Germānōrum ex fīnibus suīs trāns
pontem iam properābant. 10. Hanc hiemem cum septem
cohortibus in fīnibus tuīs hiemābimus; sed prīmō vēre[3] ad
mare properābimus.

199. 1. The third summer your legions were pacified with
gifts. 2. He was hurrying through the long night toward
the sea. 3. For seven consecutive hours they brought grain

---

[1] Ex is used before a vowel or h; before a consonant either ē or ex.

[2] That is, having the same form for all genders and cases.

[3] prīmō vēre, *at the opening of spring*.

into the citadel.   4. I shall be here with my fleet both this
"year and the next winter.   5. But at the opening of spring
I shall storm the city.   6. What tribes approached from
their lands at dawn ?   7. At that time your companions
and the hostages were eager for glory.   8. Throughout this
winter the spirit of the soldiers was made firm by (their)
victories.

LESSON XXVI

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

(W. 113–116; B. 67–70; AG. 114–118; H. 125–128.)

200.   Audāx, *bold*

STEM audāci-

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
GEN.	audācis		audācium	
DAT.	audācī		audācibus	
ACC.	audācem	audāx	audācīs, -ēs	audācia
ABL.	audācī		audācibus	

Fortis, *brave*

STEM forti-

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
GEN.	fortis		fortium	
DAT.	fortī		fortibus	
ACC.	fortem	forte	fortīs, -ēs	fortia
ABL.	fortī		fortibus	

Ācer, *sharp, eager, spirited*

Stem ācri-

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs,-ēs	ācrīs,-ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

(*a*) Notice that these adjectives are all declined like i- stems.

(*b*) Adjectives declined like **audāx** are called *Adjectives of One Termination;* those declined like **fortis, forte,** *Adjectives of Two Terminations;* and those declined like **ācer, ācris, ācre,** *Adjectives of Three Terminations.* The endings of these three classes do not differ except in the nominative singular and in the accusative singular neuter.

201.   VOCABULARY

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, eager, spirited.*

armō, -āre, *to arm* (**arma**).

atrōx, -ōcis, *savage, cruel.*

audāx, -ācis, *bold* (**audācia**).

brevis, breve, *short.*

celer, celeris, celere, *swift, quick.*

dīmicō, -āre, *to fight, contend* (compare **pūgnō**).

equester, equestris, equestre, *belonging to the cavalry, equestrian* (**equus, eques**).

facilis, facile, *easy.*

fortis, forte, *brave, strong.*

ita, adv. *so, thus, in this manner.*

omnis, omne, *all, every.*

studium, -ī, n. *zeal, desire.*

vēlōx, -ōcis, *swift, fleet.*

202. 1. Omnēs Belgae cum fīnitimīs gentibus diū coniūrāverant. 2. Cōnsul cum fortī legiōne in eā parte hiemābat. 3. Ex eā arce ubi hiemāvistī brevī tempore pontī adpropinquābis. 4. Nam in itinere audācēs hostēs equestrī proeliō dīmicābunt. 5. Germānī, quī nōn longē aberant, optimīs hastīs et gladiīs armābantur. 6. Sed itinera per fīnīs vestrōs nōn erant facilia; equitēs nostrī eōs superābunt. 7. Equī Germānōrum et ācrēs et celerēs sunt; itaque illī prīmā

vigiliā adpropinquābunt. 8. Septem hōrās continuās proe-
lium erat atrōx; sed nocte superātī sumus. 9. Studiō vic-
tōriae classis vēlōx ā Rōmānīs celeriter aedificāta est.
10. Prīmō vēre animōs ācrīs mīlitum ita cōnfīrmāvit dux:
"Hanc aestātem atrōcīs hostīs fugābitis."

203. 1. Who will arm these swift ships? 2. With this
fleet we shall contend against all the Belgians. 3. Thus
were they urged on by (their) cruel desire for victory.
4. In a short time the swift foot-soldiers will contend in
a battle with cavalry forces. 5. Victory will not be easy,
for now all are awaiting battle. 6. The Roman cohorts
thus spent[1] the next winter among the bold tribes. 7. The
leader hurried across the bridge with his eager cavalry.
8. We shall carry the arms of the brave young men.

LESSON XXVII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

(W. 119, 120; B. 71: 1, 2; AG. 123, 124; H. 149–151.)

204. Adjectives have three degrees of comparison,
as in English — positive, comparative, and superlative.

The comparative is formed by adding -**ior** (m. and
f.), -**ius** (n.), and the superlative by adding -**issimus,**
-**issima,** -**issimum** to the stem of the positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus (alto-)	alt-ior	alt-issimus[2]
fortis (forti-)	fort-ior	fort-issimus
audāx (audāci-)	audāc-ior	audāc-issimus

---

[1] See **198**, 10.

[2] Notice that the final vowel of the stem of the positive is dropped
before the endings are added. Remember that the superlative means
highest, most high, or *very high.*

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

205. Comparatives are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
Nom., Voc.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortiōris		fortiōrum	
Dat.	fortiōrī		fortiōribus	
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Abl.	fortiōre		fortiōribus	

(*a*) Notice that the comparative is declined throughout like a consonant stem.

206. Superlatives are all declined like **bonus (64)**.

207. Compare: **clārus, brevis, trīstis, vēlōx.**

208.   VOCABULARY

conlocō, -āre, *to station, place.*

dūrus, -a, -um, *hard, difficult.*

gravis, -e, *heavy, severe.*

imperō, -āre, *to order* (with dat. of person).[1]

levis, leve, *light, slight.*

māter, -tris, f. *mother.*

mulier, -eris, f. *woman.*

occultō, -āre, *to hide, conceal.*

pater, -tris, m. *father.*

pēs, pedis, m. *foot.*

post, prep. with acc. *after, behind.*

timidus, -a, -um, *timid* (**timor**).

trīstis, -e, *sad.*

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*

209. 1. Gallī sunt fortēs, sed nostrī audāciōrēs erunt.
2. Belgae dūrissimō tempore annī cum Germānīs dīmicant.
3. Eā aestāte gravius et atrōcius bellum exspectābāmus.
4. Mōns ubi dux timidus equestrīs cōpiās conlocāverat, altissimus erat.   5. Tertiā vigiliā dux fortissimus animōs mīlitum ita cōnfīrmāvit.   6. "Prīmā lūce levī proeliō eques-

---

[1] With dat. of person and accu. of thing ordered, *to order to furnish* : **Eīs obsidēs imperāvit,** *He ordered them to furnish hostages.*

trī hostīs omnīs fugābimus. 7. Mulierēs timidiōrēs in altissimīs silvīs occultātae sunt ubi tūtiōrēs erunt. 8. Sed iam septem annōs continuōs cum audācissimīs Gallīs pūgnāvistis. 9. Obsidēs Gallīs imperāvī, quōs in locō tūtissimō occultāvimus. 10. Gallī, post hanc aestātem ante pedēs nostrōs trīstissimī pācem postulābitis." 11. Inter obsidēs quōs studiō quiētis ducī dederant, trīstiōrēs[1] erant mātrēs et patrēs prīncipum.

210. 1. This state was the boldest and its name the most famous. 2. The enemy's horses are swifter and more eager. 3. In a severer cavalry battle we conquered the enemy. 4. At the opening of spring you will station your soldiers on the very high bridge. 5. Therefore their journey into the Gauls' territory will be very hard. 6. We shall order them to furnish the fathers and mothers of chiefs as hostages.[2] 7. After the slight battle the women were hidden in safer places. 8. From their desire for peace they will hurry by a shorter road.

LESSON XXVIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

(W. 122, 123; B. 71: 3, 4; AG. 125, 126; H. 152: 1–3.)

211. Adjectives ending in -er form the superlative by adding -rimus to this r :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher	pulchr-ior	pulcher-rimus
ācer	ācr-ior	ācer-rimus

In the same way compare miser, līber.

---

[1] *the sadder ones.*   [2] *As hostages*, express by an appositive.

212. Six adjectives in -ilis form the superlative by adding -limus to the l :

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
facilis, *easy*	facil-ior	facil-limus
difficilis, *difficult*	difficil-ior	difficil-limus
similis, *like*	simil-ior	simil-limus
dissimilis, *unlike*	dissimil-ior	dissimil-limus
humilis, *low*	humil-ior	humil-limus
gracilis,[1] *slender*	gracil-ior	gracil-limus

213.   VOCABULARY

Caesar, -aris, m. *Caesar.*
decem (indeclinable), *ten.*
difficilis, -e, *difficult.*
dissimilis,[2] -e, *unlike.*
humilis, -e, *low.*
incolumis, -e, *unharmed.*
însīgnis, -e, *remarkable, prominent, distinguished.*

occupō, -āre, *to seize, take possession of.*
ōrdō, -inis, m. *order, rank.*
pūgna, -ae, f. *battle* (pūgnō).
rogō, -āre, *to ask, ask for.*
similis,[2] -e, *like.*

214. 1. Inter arborēs pulcherrimās pūgna erit facillima. 2. Caesar apud Belgās, quī sunt dissimilēs Germānōrum, hiemābit. 3. Inde post hiemem cum equitibus acerrimīs ad cōpiās properāvit, quae hostīs iam pācāverant. 4. In itinere, quod erit difficillimum, oppidānīs frūmentum et argentum imperābō. 5. Dux ille, cui est nōmen Caesar, cohortibus aegerrimīs quiētem dedit. 6. Decem hōrās continuās in collibus humilibus altiōrēs turrīs aedificābātis.

[1] As gracilis is not frequently found in the Latin read in schools it is not used in the exercises of this book, but is given here merely to make the list complete.

[2] These adjectives have either the genitive or the dative dependent on them, but the genitive is more common when persons are meant: *e.g.* Ille est dissimilis nostrōrum, *He is unlike our men.*

7. Ibi incolumēs eritis; sed hostēs, avidissimī pūgnae, eās oppūgnābunt.   8. Īnsīgnī studiō omnēs ōrdinēs līberōs et mulierēs in locō tūtiōre conlocābunt.   9. Nam victor iam obsidēs rogāverat; itaque miserrimī Gallī timōre incitābantur.   10. Similī studiō fīnitimī et audāciōrēs erunt et montēs humillimōs occupābunt.

215. 1. In a short time we shall seize the lowest towers. 2. For ten hours the road will be more difficult. 3. The more timid women will be hidden in a safer place. 4. In the third watch all ranks will approach the town. 5. The names of the Germans are very unlike ours, but similar to the names of their neighbors. 6. Caesar asked for a part of the bravest troops, which were stationed behind the town. 7. We shall order our boldest enemies to furnish (their) mothers and fathers as hostages.   8. With remarkable bravery this tribe contended with the most cruel Germans.

LESSON XXIX

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

(W. 125, 126; B. 72, 73; AG. 129, 130 a, b; H. 154, 155.)

216. The following adjectives are irregular in comparison, the comparative and the superlative being formed from stems different from those of the positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior, melius	optimus
malus	pēior, pēius	pessimus
māgnus	māior, māius	maximus
parvus	minor, minus	minimus
multus	plūs	plūrimus

6

217. **Plūs** is defective in declension :

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	———	plūris	plūrium	
Dat.	———	———	plūribus	
Acc.	———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	———	plūre	plūribus	

218. The following have no positive ; but certain adverbs or prepositions show the stems from which the comparative and the superlative are formed :

(prae, *before*)	prior, *former*	prīmus, *first*
(citrā, *this side of*)	citerior, *hither*	citimus, *hithermost*
(ultrā, *beyond*)	ulterior, *farther*	ultimus, *farthest, last*
(in, intrā, *in, within*)	interior, *inner*	intimus, *inmost*
(prope, *near*)	propior, *nearer*	proximus, *nearest, next*

219. The positive forms of the following are rare :

exterus, *outward*	exterior, *outer*	extrēmus, *remotest*
īnferus, *below*	īnferior, *lower*	īnfimus (īmus), *lowest*
posterus, *following*	posterior, *later*	postrēmus, *last*
superus, *above*	superior, *higher*	suprēmus (summus), *highest*

220. 1. Hanc hiemem in citeriōre Galliā hiemāvimus. 2. Sed prīmō vēre ācerrimīs cum cōpiīs in ulteriōrem Galliam properābimus. 3. Iter nostrum per montēs propiōrēs erit brevissimum sed difficilius. 4. Cīvīs Rōmānōs quī in servitūte miserrimā sunt proximō annō līberābitis. 5. Īnsignī virtūte interiōra moenia oppidī ā plūrimīs Gallīs oppūgnābantur. 6. Sed nostrī, quī meliōrēs et ācriōrēs erant, in locīs īnferiōribus conlocātī erant. 7. Trāns superiōrem

partem flūminis priōre nocte patrēs et mātrēs Gallōrum
occultātī[1] erant.   8. Dē perīculīs gravissimīs sociōrum, quī
semper incolumēs fuerant, haec nūntiāta erant.   9. " In
extrēmīs fīnibus Germānī agrōs iam vāstant; illīs neque
arma nec ducēs sunt.   10. Quis eōs servābit et dūrissimō
tempore annī ex oppidīs trāns flūmen portābit ? "

221. 1. On the farther bank was a low hill and a very
high tree.   2. Hither the worst cohorts were being called
together.   3. The greater part had been defeated during
the night before.[2]   4. The remaining enemy we shall drive
in flight[3] into the remotest towns.   5. Their desire for
honor was less, but their fear of death greater.   6. Victory
will be very easy, for these men are not without fear.   7. In
a short time the chiefs of Gaul will ask for peace before
your feet.   8. You are approaching with your men by the
easiest road out of the lower places.

LESSON XXX

REVIEW OF THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

222. Compare the following:

ācer	dissimilis	līber	posterus	superus
aeger	exterus	māgnus	prior	tener
bonus	facilis	malus	propior	ulterior
celer	humilis	miser	pulcher	
citerior	īnferus	multus	sacer	
difficilis	interior	parvus	similis	

---

[1] When masculine and feminine nouns are modified by the same
adjective or, as here, by the same participle, the gender of the adjec-
tive or the participle is masculine.

[2] prior.   [3] fugō.

223. Review the following prepositions, which have occurred up to this point, and name the cases which they govern:

ā, ab	apud	dē	inter	prō
ad	contrā	ē, ex	per	sine
ante	cum	in	post	trāns

224.   ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

1. Germānī māiōrēs sunt quam Gallī. ⎫ *The Germans are larger*
2. Germānī māiōrēs Gallīs sunt.   ⎬ *than the Gauls.*
3. Illī nāvīs vēlōciōrēs quam nostrās ⎫ *They see swifter ships*
      vident.   ⎬ *than ours.*
4. Illī nāvīs vēlōciōrēs nostrīs vident. ⎭

(*a*) Notice that the comparative may be followed by **quam,** as in sentences 1 and 3, or by the simple ablative, as in sentences 2 and 4. This ablative is called the *Ablative of Comparison.*

If **quam** is used, the objects compared, here **Gallī** and **nostrās** (**nāvīs**), are in the same cases as those with which they are compared, **Germānī** and **nāvīs.** The ablative can be used only in place of the nominative or the accusative with **quam**; the conjunction **quam** must be used in a sentence like **Meliōra dōna mīlitibus quam agricolīs dedit,** *He gave better gifts to the soldiers than to the farmers.*

225. RULE. — The Ablative of Comparison **may be used** after the nominative or accusative of comparatives.

(W. 380, 381; B. 217; AG. 406; H. 471.)

226. 1. Apud hās gentēs plūrēs sunt mīlitēs quam agricolae. **2.** Corpora Gallōrum minōra animō et virtūte sunt. **3.** Hominēs omnis ōrdinis sunt avidiōrēs laudis quam trī-

stium labōrum.   4. Castra in summō monte[1] māiōre cum labōre quam caede occupāvistis.   5. Quis ad īnfimum col-lem[1] concilium minōre audāciā quam timōre convocāvit?   6. Apud Rōmānōs sacra templa deōrum sunt vestrōrum[2] simillima.   7. Iter per summōs collīs erit facilius quam per fīnīs hostium.   8. In postrēmā arce iuvenīs aegriōrēs con-locābimus ubi incolumēs erunt.   9. Patrēs, properāvistisne ad citeriōrem rīpam cum celerrimīs equīs et audāciōribus peditibus?   10. In plūrimīs urbibus moenia sunt pēiōra et minōra quam in nostrō oppidō.

227. 1. This road through the forest will be more diffi-cult than that. 2. There are higher trees on the top of the hill than in the plains. 3. In this city we shall build lower walls than in that town. 4. The foot-soldiers of this tribe are swifter and more cruel than our men. 5. Very many Gauls will contend with the Germans behind the walls. 6. Owing to scarcity of grain all your men asked for both a larger and a better supply. 7. For seven hours the king's companions devastated the fields with less fear than hatred. 8. I ordered the farther tribes to furnish[3] hostages without delay.

REVIEW OF LESSONS XV–XXX

228. NOUNS

aestās	audācia	celeritās	cohors
amor	Belgae	cīvis	collis
animal	caedēs	cīvitās	comes
annus	Caesar	clāmor	concilium
arbor	caput	classis	coniūnx
arx	castra	cliēns	cōnsilium

[1] **Summus** and **īnfimus** often mean *the highest part of, the lowest part of*, respectively : **summus mōns,** *the top of the mountain ;* **īnfimus collis,** *the bottom of the hill.*
[2] Compare **213,** n. 2.   [3] Compare **208,** n. 1.

Nouns — *Continued*

cōnsul	iuvenis	Nerviī	rīpa
corpus	labor	nōmen	salūs
dux	laus	nox	servitūs
eques	lēgātus	numerus	sīgnum
fīnis	legiō	obses	socius
flūmen	locus	ōrdō	studium
gēns	lūx	pars	tempus
Germānī	mare	pater	timor
Haeduī	māter	pāx	turris
hiems	mīles	pedes	urbs
homō	moenia	pēs	vēr–
honor	mōns	pōns	victor
hōra	mora	praeda	vigilia
hostis	mors	prīnceps	virtūs
īgnis	mulier	pūgna	vōx
iter	nātūra	quiēs	vulnus
iūdex	nāvis	rēx	

229. ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

ācer	facilis	minor	septem
altus	fortis	noster	septimus
atrōx	gravis	omnis	similis
audāx	hīc	optimus	summus
avidus	humilis	parātus	superior
brevis	idōneus	pēior	superus
celer	ille	pessimus	suprēmus
citerior	incolumis	plūrimus	suus
citimus	īnferior	plūs	tertius
continuus	īnferus	posterior	timidus
decem	īnfimus	posterus	trīstis
difficilis	īnsīgnis	postrēmus	tūtus
dissimilis	intimus	prīmus	ulterior
dūrus	interior	prior	ultimus
equester	is	propior	vēlōx
exterior	levis	quī	vester
exterus	māior	quis	
extrēmus	melior	reliquus	

230.   VERBS

absum	conlocō	iuvō	postulō
adpropinquō	convocō	nūntiō	properō
armō	dīmicō	occultō	rogō
comparō	exspectō	occupō	
cōnfirmō	hiemō	pācō	
coniūrō	imperō	parō	

231.   ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, AND PREPOSITIONS

ad	hīc	in	nunc
ante	hinc	inde	per
apud	hūc	inter	post
celeriter	iam	intereā	prō
contrā	illīc	ita	quō
eō	illinc	longē	trāns
et . . . et	illō	nam	unde
ē, ex	illūc	neque . . . neque	

232.   INFLECTIONS

hīc, ille, quī, quis, is

Nouns of the Third Declension.	Comparison of Adjectives.
Adjectives of the Third Declension.	Declension of Comparatives.

233.   CONSTRUCTIONS

Agreement of the Relative.	Dative with **adpropinquō, imperō, idōneus.**
Agreement of Adjectives with nouns of different gender.	Accusative of Time.
Adjectives used as Substantives.	Accusative of Limit of Motion with **ad, in.**
Objective Genitive.	Ablative of Time.
Genitive (and Dative) with **similis** and **dissimilis.**	Ablative of Manner.
	Ablative of Comparison.

234.   IDIOMS AND PHRASES

quā dē causā	nāvis longa	summus mōns
prīmā lūce	prīmō vēre	īnfimus collis

LESSON XXXI

DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE AND SEPARATION

235. ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

1. **Haec via est multō diffi-**   *This way is much more diffi-*
   cilior.   *cult.*
2. **Turris decem pedibus al-**   *The tower is ten feet higher*
   tior est quam mūrus.   *than the wall.*

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives **multō, decem pedibus** answer the questions, "*How much more difficult, how much higher?*" Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of Degree of Difference.*

236. RULE. — **The Ablative of Degree of Difference is used with comparatives and words suggesting comparison.**[1]

(W. 393; B. 223; AG. 414; H. 479.)

237.   ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

1. **Amīcōs cūrā līberāvit.**   *He freed his friends from care.*
2. **Oppidānōs armīs prīvā-**   *They will deprive the townsmen*
   bunt.   *of their arms.*
3. **Locus ā mīlitibus vacuus**   *The place was free of soldiers.*
   erat.

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives **cūrā, armīs, ā mīlitibus** tell what one is relieved of, deprived of, or freed from. Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of Separation.*

238. RULE. — **The Ablative of Separation is used with verbs meaning to free, relieve, deprive, need, lack, and with adjectives denoting freedom and want.**[2]

(W. 374–377; B. 214; AG. 400–402, *a*; H. 461–465.)

---

[1] The most common words suggesting comparison are the adverbs **ante,** *before;* **post,** *afterward;* and the verb **mālō,** *to prefer* (**564**).

[2] The words of this class which have been used already are **līberō** and **līber.**

(*a*) These verbs regularly have the simple ablative if things are referred to, but with persons a preposition is used ; *e.g.* **cīvitātem ā rēge līberat** and sentence 3 just given (**237**).

239.   VOCABULARY

ante, adv. *before, previously.*
dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. *defender.*
etiam, adv. *even, also.*
multō,[1] adv. *much.*
paulō,[1] adv. *a little.*
post, adv. *afterward, later.*

prīvō, -āre, *to deprive of.*
-que,[2] conj. *and.*
sī, conj. *if.*
spoliō, -āre, *to strip, despoil of.*
vacuus, -a, -um, *free from, stripped of.*

240. 1. Vulnera mea multō graviōra sunt quam tua. 2. Quis mulierēs patrēsque trīstīs miserrimā servitūte līberāvit? 3. Paulō post ab extrēmīs fīnibus hominēs maximā celeritāte adpropinquābant. 4. Coniugēs līberōsque, quōs[3] nōn cūrāverās, ab atrōcī dominō līberāvī. 5. Etiam in eā urbe quae nōn longē ā castrīs abest, multō tūtiōrēs erimus. 6. Sī iuvenīs hastīs gladiīsque spoliābimus, multō audāciōrēs erunt iūdicēs. 7. Moenia iam erant ab dēfēnsōribus vacua; itaque sine morā oppūgnāvimus. 8. Paulō ante plūrēs equōs māiōremque cōpiam frūmentī rogāverātis. 9. Maxima erit laus, sī etiam dūrissimō tempore annī dēfēnsōrēs timōre mortis līberābimus. 10. Nāvēs, quae eā hieme apud Gallōs aedificātae sunt, decem pedibus altiōrēs nostrīs erant.

241. 1. Who deprived the strong soldiers of (their) arms? 2. This hill is many feet higher than the plain. 3. A little before we had seized the fleet, which was stripped of de-

---

[1] **Multō** and **paulō** are really the ablatives singular neuter of the adjectives **multus** and **paulus**; they are, however, generally called adverbs.

[2] An enclitic (**21**), always attached to the second of a pair of words; *e.g.* **bonus fortisque.** Compare -ne.

[3] When a relative pronoun refers to antecedents which have different genders, it is masculine if the antecedents mean living beings.

fenders.   4. Ten hours later you despoiled the horsemen
of (their) supply of grain.   5. That wall, which is much
lower than our towers, will be taken by storm.   6. The
bridge which we built across the river was many feet
longer and wider.   7. On the tops of the mountains the
trees are much smaller than in the low plains.   8. If the
youths of our people will care for the sacred temples of
the god, we shall be saved.

LESSON XXXII

FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS

242.   FOURTH DECLENSION

(W. 93–96; B. 48–50; AG. 88–92; H. 131–133.)

Stems in *u*

243.   **Frūctus**, m. *fruit*   **Cornū**, n. *horn*

STEM   **frūctu-**   **cornu-**

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	frūctus	cornū
GEN.	frūctūs	cornūs
DAT.	frūctuī (ū)	cornū
ACC.	frūctum	cornū
ABL.	frūctū	cornū

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	frūctūs	cornua
GEN.	frūctuum	cornuum
DAT.	frūctibus	cornibus
ACC.	frūctūs	cornua
ABL.	frūctibus	cornibus

(*a*) A few nouns, of which **portus**, *harbor*, is the most common,
have either -**ubus** or -**ibus** in the dative and the ablative plural.

244. The gender of most nouns of the fourth declension ending in -us is masculine. A few, of which **domus,**[1] *house*, and **manus,** *hand*, are the most common, are feminine. All ending 'in -ū are neuter.

245. FIFTH DECLENSION

(W. 97, 98; B. 51–53; AG. 95–98; H. 134, 135.)

Stems in *ē*

246.

		Diēs, m. *day*	Rēs, f. *thing*
	STEM	diē-	rē-
		SINGULAR	
Nom., Voc.		diēs	rēs
Gen.		diēī	reī
Dat.		diēī	reī
Acc.		diem	rem
Abl.		diē	rē
		PLURAL	
Nom., Voc.		diēs	rēs
Gen.		diērum	rērum
Dat.		diēbus	rēbus
Acc.		diēs	rēs
Abl.		diēbus	rēbus

(*a*) Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined throughout. Other nouns, if used at all in the plural, are found only in the nominative and the accusative.

(*b*) Notice that in the genitive and the dative singular the stem vowel **e** is long when preceded by another vowel, but short when preceded by a consonant.

247. The gender of nouns of the fifth declension is feminine with the exception of **diēs,** *day*, which is usually masculine.

---

[1] Besides the regular forms of the fourth declension **domus** has also those forms of the second which contain ō: **domō, domōrum, domōs** (535).

waited long for the signal.   6. But at the third hour the timid tribune recalled his forces.   7. This thing incited the enemy, already eager, and they attacked the nearer walls. 8. But these bands were driven in flight [1] to the foot of the mountain, where the slaughter was fearful.

LESSON XXXIII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

(W. 235–239; B. 76, 77; AG. 214 *a–e*, 218; H. 304–311.)

251. Most adverbs are derived from adjective stems:

ADJECTIVES	ADVERBS
longus (longo-)	longē, *far*
miser (misero-)	miserē, *wretchedly*

(*a*) Notice that these adverbs are formed from stems of adjectives of the first and second declensions by changing the final vowel of the stem to -ē.

252.

ADJECTIVES	ADVERBS
ācer (ācri-)	ācriter, *eagerly*
audāx (audāci-)	audācter, *boldly*
fortis (forti-)	fortiter, *bravely*

(*a*) Notice that these adverbs are formed from stems of adjectives of the third declension by the addition of -ter; but **audācter** drops the **i**.

253. The accusative or the ablative neuter singular of adjectives is sometimes used as an adverb, *e.g.* **multum**, *much;* **facile**, *easily;* **tūtō**, *safely;* **subitō**, *suddenly;* **multō**, *(by) much;* **paulō**, *(by) little.*

---

[1] fugō.

254. Adverbs follow the comparison of the adjectives from which they are derived:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
longē	long-ius	long-issimē
miserē	miser-ius	miser-rimē
ācriter	ācr-ius	ācer-rimē
audācter	audāc-ius	audāc-issimē
fortiter	fort-ius	fort-issimē
facile	facil-ius	facil-limē
tūtō	tūt-ius	tūt-issimē

(a) Notice that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the adjective, and that the superlative ends in -ē, corresponding to the adjective ending in -us, as in the positive.

255. The following common adverbs are irregular in comparison:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene, *well*	melius	optimē
male, *ill*	pēius	pessimē
multum, *much*	plūs	plūrimum
parum (*too*) *little*	minus	minimē
diū, *long*	diūtius	diūtissimē
	magis,[1] *more*	maximē

256.   VOCABULARY

ācriter, adv. *eagerly, fiercely.*

adsum, -esse, -fuī (ad + sum), *to be present, be at hand.*

audācter, adv. *boldly.*

bene, adv. *well.*

facile, adv. *easily.*

fēlīciter, adv. *fortunately, successfully.*

impedīmentum, -ī, n. *hindrance;* plur. *baggage.*

magis, adv. *more.*

posteā, adv. *afterward.*

prōvincia, -ae, f. *province.*

subitō, adv. *suddenly.*

tūtō, adv. *safely.*

---

[1] Some adjectives and adverbs are compared with **magis** and **maximē**, especially adjectives in -us preceded by e or i; *e.g.* **idōneus**, **magis idōneus, maximē idōneus.**

257. 1. Ille lēgātus, quī subitō aderat, haec nūntiāvit. 2. " Bene et fēlīciter in aciē septem hōrās pūgnāverat exercitus noster. 3. Impedīmentīs spoliāvimus agmina hostium, quī coniugum causā ācerrimē[1] dīmicābant. 4. Sī multō ācrius celeriusque quam priōre aestāte properābitis, incolumēs eritis. 5. Septimō diē ex citeriōre parte prōvinciae oppidō, quod iam ā dēfēnsōribus vacuum est, tūtō adpropinquābitis. 6. Hīc erit locus nātūrā castrīs maximē idōneus; hūc et impedīmenta et mulierēs portābimus. 7. Posteā omnīs ōrdinēs oppidānōrum armīs prīvābimus eīsque obsidēs patrēs et mātrēs imperābimus. 8. Hī timidōs puerōs puellāsque in silvā, quae longissimē abest, tūtissimē occultāvērunt." 9. Dē hīs rēbus concilium hominum maximē īnsīgnium subitō convocātum est; plūrimī celeriter aderant. 10. Nam sīgna īgnibus facile data erant; sed spēs victōriae salūtisque erat dubia.

258. 1. In former years these tribes fought more boldly. 2. They hurry eagerly into battle with the greatest speed. 3. If our army is suddenly present,[2] these will be deprived of the result of their labors. 4. The march through the hills will be far more difficult than through the province. 5. A little before, the cavalry had pacified these tribes also with success and good fortune.[3] 6. A short time afterward we recalled them to the tops of the hills where the baggage was. 7. The tribune will boldly help the right wing with better foot-soldiers. 8. If they have good hope of peace, they will very easily be present at daybreak.

---

[1] The superlative of an adverb, like that of an adjective, may often be translated by *most*, *very*, etc.

[2] Notice that we use the present tense in such clauses where the Latin uses the future.

[3] Compare 257, 2.

LESSON XXXIV

SECOND OR ē CONJUGATION

PRESENT SYSTEM

259. Learn the present, the imperfect, and the future indicative, active and passive, and the present infinitive of **habeō (552).**

(W. 176, 177; B. 103, 104; AG. 185; H. 209–211.)

(*a*) Compare these forms of **habeō** carefully with those of **amō.** Observe that the only difference is in the stem vowels.

(*b*) Conjugate the same tenses of **teneō,** *to hold.*

260. 1. Habēs, habēbimus, habēbat. 2. Tenēmus, tenēbātis, tenēbis. 3. Teneor, tenētur, tenēbimur. 4. Tenēris, tenēbāminī, tenēbitur. 5. Habēbās, tenēbāmur, tenēbantur.

261. 1. We have, you will hold, I was holding. 2. They will have, he is holding, I shall have. 3. They are being held, you (sing.) were being held, I shall be held. 4. We were having, you are holding, you are being held.

262.   VOCABULARY

aqua, -ae, f. *water.*

contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus (cum [1] + teneō), *to hold back, keep in check.*

grātia, -ae, f. *gratitude, favor, kindness;* grātiam habēre, *to feel grateful.*

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *to have.*

hīberna, -ōrum, n. plur. *winter quarters.*

impetus, -ūs, m. *attack, onset.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrūs,[2] *to remain.*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *to move;* castra movēre, *to break camp;* sīgna movēre, *to advance, attack.*

nātiō, -ōnis, f. *nation.*

nūntius, -ī, m. *messenger, message.*

---

[1] In compounds **cum** regularly has the form **con-**.

[2] **Maneō,** being an intransitive verb, has no perfect passive participle; the future active participle is therefore given. This ends in -**ūrus**, while the former would end in -**us**.

regiō, -ōnis, f. *region.*

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus (sub +
   teneō), *to sustain, withstand.*

teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, *to hold.*

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *to fear, be
   afraid.*

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *to see ;*
   pass. *to be seen* or *to seem.*

263. 1. Inter arborēs animālia videntur quae corpora
maxima habent. 2. Illīc erant multae nātiōnēs ā quibus ex-
ercitus noster timēbātur. 3. Hī gravissimum impetum nōn
audācter sustinēbunt sed facile fugābuntur. 4. Brevissimō
tempore ex hībernīs aderit agmen quod impedīmenta fortis-
simē servāvit. 5. Aquae inopiā plūrēs ad flūmen properā-
bant quam in aciē manēbant. 6. Trīstis nūntius quī subitō
aderat haec dē illīs rēbus māgnā vōce nūntiāvit. 7. "Omnīs
nātiōnēs quae celerrimē adpropinquant neque continēbimus,
nec mulierēs līberōsque nostrōs facile movēbimus. 8. Itaque
ducem vestrum auxilium rogāmus[1]; sī id ācriter dabitis,
maximam grātiam posteā habēbimus." 9. Prīmā lūce decem
cohortēs ex sinistrō cornū sīgna contrā hostīs māgnō cursū
movēbant. 10. Quī[2] diū impetum aciēī prīmae bene et
fēlīciter sustinēbant; sed caedēs atrōcissima vidēbātur.

264. 1. The horsemen are remaining in winter quarters
much longer than the foot-soldiers. 2. For the winter has
been very severe in these regions. 3. But after the third
day we shall break camp and carry our baggage to the
nearer towns. 4. There before the walls, in line of battle,
we shall boldly await the attack of many nations. 5. Al-
ready their army on the march through the nearer hills is
seen by our allies. 6. At the seventh hour they will be
present; if the right wing sustains[3] their attack, we shall
be grateful. 7. Afterwards you will seize more suitable
places on the tops of the hills. 8. These will be very
easily held.

---

[1] **Rogō** may have two accusatives depending on it : one of the person
asked, the other of the thing asked for.

[2] In Latin the relative may have its antecedent in the preceding
sentence. Translate *these.*   [3] What tense in Latin ?

7

LESSON XXXV

SECOND CONJUGATION (Continued)

PERFECT SYSTEM

265. Learn the perfect, the pluperfect, and the future perfect indicative of **habeō**, active and passive (**552**).

(W. 176, 177; B. 103, 104; AG. 185; H. 209–211.)

(*a*) Conjugate the same tenses of **moveō**, **teneō**, and **videō**.

(*b*) Notice carefully in each verb how the perfect active and the passive participle differ from the present. The endings in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect are the same for all verbs in the language.

266. 1. Habuistī, tenuerās, mōveris. 2. Mōtī sumus, mōtae erātis, vīsa sunt. 3. Vīdistis, mōtus sum, habueram. 4. Tenuērunt, vīsa erunt, vīsī erātis. 5. Mōvī, habuerāmus, vīderint.

267. 1. He will have had, you have been moved, I had been seen. 2. We have seen, you had seemed, we shall have held. 3. He had held, they had moved, we shall have been held. 4. We shall have had, he has seemed, we had been moved.

268.   PARTITIVE GENITIVE

1. **Pars mīlitum sīgna mōvit.**	*A part of the soldiers advanced.*
2. **Haec nātiō est audācissima omnium.**	*This nation is the boldest of all.*

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the genitives **mīlitum, omnium** denote the whole of which **pars, nātiō** are parts. Such a genitive is called a *Partitive Genitive*.

269. Rule. — The Partitive Genitive denotes the whole of which some other word in the sentence denotes a part.

(W. 355–357; B. 201; AG. 346; H. 440 : 5–443.)

270.

administrō, -āre, *to manage, carry on.*

adventus, -ūs, m. *arrival, approach.*

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *to increase, enlarge.*

captīvus, -ī, m. *captive.*

compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *to fill, cover.*

dēterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus (dē + terreō), *to frighten off, deter.*

fidēs, -eī, f. *faith, fidelity.*

imperātor, -ōris, m. *general* (imperō).

imperium, -ī, n. *command, rule* (imperō).

neque (nec), conj. *and not, nor.*

prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus (prō + videō), *to provide.*

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, *to frighten.*

vulnerō, -āre, *to wound* (vulnus).

271. 1. Nūntius quī adventum illārum gentium vīderat, imperātōrī haec māgnā fidē nūntiāvit. 2. "Pars hostium iam inter arborēs occultāta est; hāc nocte numerus eōrum ab reliquīs augēbitur. 3. Omnium quī nōn longē ab eā regiōne absunt, hī sunt audācissimī et cēterōrum dissimillimī." 4. Itaque imperātor omnia summā cūrā administrāverat dēfēnsōribusque moenia complēverat. 5. Sociī cōpiam frūmentī iam prōvīderant et nunc omnēs eōrum ōrdinēs arma parābant. 6. Eī quī levī proeliō equestrī vulnerātī erant cum parte captīvōrum in arce tenēbantur. 7. Hanc novā turrī validōque praesidiō oppidānī celeriter cōnfīrmāverant. 8. Sed dux noster impetum eōrum fortiter sustinuit neque ā cōnsiliō dēterritus est. 9. Subitō pars sociōrum quōrum fidēs iam dubia fuerat, et clāmōribus et cursū hostium territa est. 10. Neque imperiō continēbantur neque in aciē manēbant; sed nostrī māiōre cum animō dīmicāvērunt.

272. 1. At the third hour their courage was increased by the general's arrival. 2. He[1] was not frightened, but managed everything[2] with the greatest care. 3. A small part[3] of

---

[1] See **263**, n. 2. [2] omnia. [3] Compare **143**, n. 3.

their foot-soldiers were already afraid and[1] did not[1] seem eager for battle. 4. The rest neither sustained our attack long nor remained in line. 5. The number of the captives also was much greater than in previous[2] wars. 6. The slaughter had been dreadful, and the camp was filled with those who had been wounded. 7. These things deterred the Gauls from (their) plan, and they asked for peace. 8. The general ordered all nations whose fidelity was doubtful to furnish[3] hostages and money.

LESSON XXXVI

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY

273.

1. Hīc est vir summae vir- tūtis.	*This is a man of the greatest courage.*
2. Imperātor summā indus- triā adest.	*A general of the greatest in- dustry is here.*
3. Ibi erat flūmen altīs rīpīs.	*There was a river in that place with high banks.*

(*a*) Notice that the phrases **summae virtūtis, summā indus- triā, altīs rīpīs**, all express some quality or characteristic of the nouns they modify. They are in fact adjective expressions and may be used parallel to an adjective ; *e.g.* **vir fortis et summā audāciā**, *a man brave and of the greatest boldness.*

(*b*) Notice also that in each sentence the genitive or ablative is modified by an adjective.

274. Rule. — **Quality may be expressed by a noun in the Genitive, but only when the latter is modified by an adjective.**[4]

(W. 394; B. 203; AG. 345; H. 440: 3.)

---

[1] *And not*, use one word.   [2] prior.   [3] See **208**, n.
[4] That is, we may say **vir summae virtūtis**, *a man of the greatest courage ;* but instead of **vir virtūtis**, we must say **fortis vir.**

275. RULE. — Quality may be expressed also by a noun in the Ablative when the latter is modified by an adjective or some other modifier.[1]

(W. 394; B. 224; AG. 415; H. 473 : 2.)

276. VOCABULARY

aditus, -ūs, m. *approach.*

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus (ad + iuvō), *to help, assist.*

adulēscēns, -entis, m. *a young man.*

altitūdō, -inis, f. *height, depth* (altus).

auctōritās, -ātis, f. *influence, authority.*

dēnique, adv. *finally.*

difficultās, -ātis, f. *difficulty* (difficilis).

māgnitūdō, -inis, f. *size* (māgnus).

necessārius, -a, -um, *necessary, needful.*

paucī, -ae, -a, *few.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m. *the Rhine.*

277. 1. Imperātōrem habuimus summae audāciae et māgnō corpore. 2. Huic nūntius dē difficultāte itineris et rēbus necessāriīs multa narrāvit. 3. "Aditus ad montēs erit difficillimus, ubi nostrī semper terrēbuntur. 4. Prīnceps, cui summum est imperium,[2] est adulēscēns maximā auctōritāte summāque virtūte. 5. Cūius odiō omnēs quī trāns Rhēnum habitant iam mōtī sunt neque eum adiuvābunt. 6. Sī sīgna mōverimus, et altitūdine arborum et māgnitūdine silvae aciem eōrum nōn vidēbimus."

7. Sed dux noster nec timuit nec māgnitūdine perīculī ā cōnsiliō suō dēterritus est. 8. Paucīs diēbus summā celeritāte impedīmenta ad rīpam pars servōrum portāverat; pars classem aedificāverat. 9. Rhēnus est flūmen lātum humilibusque rīpīs; itaque haec omnia bene et fēlīciter ad-

---

[1] There is often no distinction between the genitive and the ablative, but for expressions of time, space, and number the genitive is used, *e.g.* mūrus decem pedum; while for parts of the body and external qualities the ablative is employed, *e.g.* puer māgnīs pedibus, and sentence 3 above.

[2] *the supreme command.*

ministrāta sunt.   10. Dēnique nāvīs complēverat eīs quī
fortissimī et celerrimī fuērunt omnium, quōs trāns flūmen
ita portāvit.

278.   1. He was a young man of great influence and the
best reputation.   2. And[1] he had not feared our approach,
but had broken camp.   3. But our cohorts were deterred
neither by the great size[2] of the Germans nor by the diffi-
culty of the journey.   4. For the leader who had the
supreme command had provided all that was necessary.[3]
5. Finally we were the victors; few of our men, but many
of the enemy, had been wounded.   6. Among the captives
was a chief of remarkable fame and courage.   7. By this
most famous victory our hope of peace was suddenly in-
creased, and all praised our fidelity.

LESSON XXXVII

THIRD OR ĕ CONJUGATION[4]

279. Learn the present system of **regō** in the indica-
tive, active and passive, and the present infinitive (**554**).

(W. 178, 179; B. 105, 106; AG. 186; H. 212–214.)

(*a*) Notice that the present stem of verbs of this conjugation
ends in a short vowel which has the varying forms **i, e, u,** and
before other vowels disappears entirely.   It is exactly like the
variable vowel which follows **b** in the future of the first and
second conjugations.   (See **99** *a* and foot-note.)   Consequently
the present stem has four forms : **reg-, regi-, rege-, regu-.**

---

[1] Translate *and . . . not* by one word.
[2] *great size*, one word.   [3] *necessary things.*
[4] This is called the ĕ conjugation because the stem vowel is ĕ in the
infinitive, even though it is usually different in the other forms of the
verb.

(*b*) In this conjugation, and also in the fourth, the tense signs of the imperfect and the future are somewhat different from those in the first and second conjugations:

	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
First and Second Conj.	-bā-	-b-, -bi-, -be-, -bu-.
Third and Fourth Conj.	-ēbā-	{ -a- (first person sing.). { -ē- (elsewhere).

In both these tenses the variable stem vowel of the third conjugation disappears, since the tense signs begin with vowels.

280. Conjugate the following: dīcō, *to say ;* dūcō, *to lead ;* mittō, *to send.*

281. 1. Regit, dīcēbat, dūcet. 2. Mittor, dūcēbāris, regētur. 3. Dīcēmus, mittēbāminī, dūcitur. 4. Regam, mittuntur, dūcēbāmus. 5. Dīcēbam, regeris, dūcētis.

282. 1. You were saying, I am sending, you will be ruled. 2. You are being sent, they are ruling, I shall be led. 3. You are saying, they are being sent, we were being led. 4. We are ruling, they will say, he was being sent.

283. VOCABULARY

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *to say.*

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *to lead.*

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *to carry on,* wage (war).

māgnopere, adv. *greatly, earnestly.*

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *to send.*

nōndum, adv. *not yet.*

petō, -ere, petīvī (-iī),[1] petītus, *to request,*[2] beg for, go for.

postquam,[3] conj. *after, when.*

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, *to rule.*

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *to write.*

ubi,[3] conj. *when.*

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *to conquer.*

---

[1] A number of verbs have two forms, *e.g.* petīvī or petiī, in the perfect active. Petiī is the more common.

[2] The person of whom the request is made is in the ablative with ā or ex. Compare rogō (263, n. 1).

[3] Postquam and ubi are commonly used with the perfect indicative, where in English we often use the pluperfect. Compare 284, 1, 3, and 7.

284. 1. Ubi Caesar ex prōvinciā hībernīs suīs adpropin-
quāvit, lēgātī eum vīdērunt. 2. Quī ab eō auxilium petē-
bant contrā inimīcōs ā quibus priōre aestāte superātī erant.
3. Postquam eī omnia nūntiāvērunt, epistulam ad tribū-
num scrībit. 4. In quā dīcit: "Sī hūc paucās cohortēs
celerrimē dūcēs, amīcōs nostrōs difficultāte et inopiā līberā-
bis. 5. Neque est iter multōrum diērum; itaque adventus
tuus multō facilius occultātus erit. 6. Sī bellum cum eīs
fēlīciter gerēs, Rōmānīs maximam grātiam Haeduī habē-
bunt."

7. Haec ubi tribūnus cōpiīs suīs nūntiāvit, studiō pūg-
nae et spē praedae maximē incitātī sunt. 8. Illī cum
difficultāte in castrīs contentī sunt imperiō; tertiā vigiliā
agmen ē castrīs dūcēbātur. 9. Prīnceps ille, quī eam gentem
regēbat, erat vir summā auctōritāte et fortissimus eārum
regiōnum. 10. Sed adventum nostrōrum nōndum exspectā-
bat; subitō ēius cōpiae māgnopere terrēbantur et ita vincē-
bantur.

285. 1. For a few were going for water in that region,
and the wall was without[1] defenders. 2. In this battle
the right wing fought most bravely and was greatly praised
by the general. 3. After this victory the tribune leads
his soldiers to the top of a hill, where a tower is built.
4. Finally he writes a letter to Caesar, in which he says
this[2]: 5. "The enemy's camp is taken and I have more
captives than foot-soldiers. 6. The fruit of this victory
is very great; in a few days ambassadors will be sent to
your winter quarters. 7. They[3] will beg for peace, but
their fidelity has not yet been seen. 8. Their leaders
seem very sad, for they have not been helped by their
neighbors."

---

[1] Use **vacuus**   [2] **haec.**   [3] In Latin, *who.*

LESSON XXXVIII

THIRD CONJUGATION (Continued)

286. Learn the perfect system of **regō**, active and passive (**554**).

(W. 178, 179; B. 105, 106; AG. 186; H. 212-214.)

(*a*) Observe carefully how the perfect active and the passive participle differ from the present in each verb.

287. VOCABULARY

Āfrica, -ae, f. *Africa.*

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus,[1] *to act, do, pass* (time).

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (ā + mittō), *to lose.*

atque, ac,[2] conj. *and.*

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, *Carthaginian.*

condiciō, -ōnis, f. *condition, terms.*

graviter, adv, *severely, deeply, hard* (gravis).

ingēns, -ntis, *enormous, huge.*

iterum, adv. *again, once more.*

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f. *embassy* (lēgātus).

minus, adv. *less* (minor).

quod, conj. *because.*

Rēgulus, -ī, m. *Regulus.*

saepe, adv. *often.*

trādūco, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (trāns + dūcō), *to lead across.*

288. 1. Rēgulus erat vir summae virtūtis quī exercitum in Āfricam trādūxerat. 2. Ubi cum Carthāginiēnsibus saepe dīmicāvit et bellum fortiter gessit. 3. Dēnique illī victī sunt et trīstēs pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt. 4. Postquam Rōmānī Rēgulō grātiās ēgērunt quod rēs optimē gesserat, illīs dūrissimās condiciōnēs dedērunt. 5. Hī per lēgātiōnem ab hostibus Rōmānōrum optimum ducem petiērunt, quī ab eīs sine morā missus est. 6. Ubi Carthāgini-

---

[1] grātiās agere, *to pay thanks, to thank.* Compare grātiam habēre, *to feel grateful.*

[2] Atque is used before vowels and c or g; ac in other situations. Compare neque, nec.

ēnsēs ita adiūtī sunt, Rōmānī ingentī caede sunt victī ac partem exercitūs āmīsērunt. 7. Sed postquam posterō annō illī minus fēlīciter rēs gessērunt, Rēgulum, quī inter captīvōs fuerat, Rōmam[1] mīsērunt. 8. Illīc dē pāce atque captīvīs dīxit: "Sī illīs pācem dederitis, imperium omnium prō- vinciārum ac maris āmīseritis. 9. Quis iterum arma vestra ac legiōnēs timēbit, quis dēnique nōmine vestrō terrēbitur, sī nunc dēterritī eritis?" 10. Haec dīxerat māgnā cum auctōritāte; omnēs graviter mōtī erant ac bellum multō ācrius administrāvērunt.

289. 1. Therefore larger armies were again led across to Africa. 2. The Romans had always been eager for rule, and had not[2] been deterred by fear. 3. Already the Carthaginians had conquered less often than in the previous year. 4. For their troops were much worse than those of the Romans. 5. When the courage of the Romans had been thus increased, they again gave them very hard terms. 6. Because they had lost all hope of victory and zeal for battle, they greatly feared our rule. 7. Regulus had not been set free, but afterward was deprived[3] of his life. 8. The Romans had already given him thanks, and always felt grateful to him.

LESSON XXXIX

FOURTH OR *i* CONJUGATION

290. Learn the conjugation of **audiō** in the indica- tive, active and passive, entire, and the present in- finitive (**558**).

(W. 180, 181; B. 107, 108; AG. 187; H. 215–217.)

---

[1] *to Rome.* With names of towns the accusative alone expresses the limit of motion; with other words, the preposition **ad** is used : **ad urbem.**

[2] See **278**, n. 1.   [3] Compare **237**.

(*a*) Notice that the present stem of this conjugation always ends in -ī, and compare the present stems of the other conjugations.

(*b*) Notice that the tense signs of the imperfect and the future are the same as in the third conjugation. But observe that the two forms **audiunt** and **audiuntur** in the present have both the **i** of the fourth conjugation and the **u** of the third.

291. Conjugate the following verbs: **impediō**, *to hinder;* **mūniō**, *to fortify.*

292. 1. Mūnīs, audiēs, impedīvistī. 2. Audiētur, audītus eris, impediēbāmur. 3. Mūnīverātis, audīverimus, mūniuntur. 4. Impedior, audītae sumus, audīta erat. 5. Impedient, mūniērunt, mūniēbās.

293. 1. He is being heard, we were hindering, I had fortified. 2. We shall have been heard, I had been hindered, he will fortify. 3. We are fortifying, you will be hindered, he will have heard. 4. We had been heard, you are being hindered, they are fortifying.

294.   VOCABULARY

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to hear.*

cadō, -ere, cecĭdī, cāsūrus,[1] *to fall.*

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus,[2] *to cut down, kill* (caedēs).

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, *to hasten, exert one's self.*

cotīdiē, adv. *daily* (diē).

hodiē, adv. *to-day* (hōc + diē).

impediō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *to hinder, check.*

mūniō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *to fortify.*

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *to drive, rout.*

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (per+veniō), *to arrive, come.*

poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, *to demand.*

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to perceive, feel.*

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus, *to come.*

---

[1] Fut. act. participle, since **cadō** is an intransitive verb. Compare **maneō** (262), and **perveniō, veniō,** above.

[2] **Cadō** and **caedō** must be carefully distinguished. Notice the quantity of the penults in the perfect active.

295. 1. Ubi adulēscēns dē ingentī māgnitūdine silvae audīvit, timor auctus est. 2. Hāc rē in itinere est impedītus, quod pater praesidī causā nōn aderat. 3. Itaque ad rēgīnae comitēs nōndum pervēnerat, nec parātus ad minimum labō-rem vidēbātur. 4. Cotīdiē hominēs miserī veniēbant quōrum pars caesa est, plūrēs suā manū cecīdērunt. 5. Quid ēgerant eī quōs hinc iuvenis ille ita vēlōciter pepulit? 6. Nec hūius auctōritātem sēnsistis neque illīus imperium timētis. 7. Manum ingentem, quae ex omnī citeriōre regiōne con-tendet, brevī tempore pontem trādūcēmus. 8. Nāvigā-bitisne cum aegrō duce trāns mare, sī necessāriae rēs in patriā prōvīsae nōn erunt? 9. In epistulā quam scrībēbat dē grātiā suā apud populum, auxilium clientium poposcit et dīxit: 10. "Sī hodiē vōcēs vestrās nōn audiam, dominus cīvitātis nōn erō vītamque āmittam."

296. 1. If he arrives before dawn, we shall perceive his coming. 2. Because the approach was easy, he hurried into (his) winter quarters. 3. The inhabitants were greatly frightened by the huge size of (his) ships. 4. Therefore they will neither hinder his approach nor wage war with him. 5. But to-day an embassy will come which will seek peace. 6. Caesar will give them very hard terms because they killed his friends. 7. He will order them to furnish more hostages and will demand a greater supply of grain daily. 8. We had not yet fortified all the hills which had been seized.

LESSON XL

FORMATION OF PRINCIPAL PARTS

297. The verbs used thus far show practically all the ways in which the stem of the perfect indicative active and the nominative of the perfect passive parti-ciple are formed.

298. The Perfect Stem is formed as follows:

1. By adding **v** (**u**)[1]: amō, amā-v-ī; habeō, hab-u-ī; audiō, audī-v-ī.

The perfects in nearly all verbs of the first conjugation, in many of the second and fourth, and in some of the third are formed in this way.

It should be noticed that the stem vowel of the second and third conjugations is usually dropped in the perfect, while in the first and fourth conjugations it is generally retained.

2. By adding **s**: augeō, (aug-s-ī) aux-ī; maneō, mān-s-ī; dīcō, (dīc-s-ī) dīx-ī; regō, (rēg-s-ī) rēx-ī; sentiō, sēn-s-ī.

This is a common way of forming the perfect in the third conjugation. The stem vowel is regularly dropped.

3. By lengthening the root vowel: videō, vīd-ī; agō, ēg-ī; vincō, vīc-ī; veniō, vēn-ī.

4. By reduplication, *i.e.* by repeating the first consonant, generally with **ĕ**: cadō, ce-cid-ī; dō, de-d-ī; pellō, pe-pul-ī; poscō, po-posc-ī.

299. The Perfect Passive Participle is formed (in the nominative singular) by adding -tus (sometimes -sus) to the present stem or a modified form of it: amā-tus, habi-tus, rēc-tus, audī-tus, pul-sus, sēn-sus, etc. The stem vowel of the third conjugation disappears here also, as a rule, and the -ē- of the second conjugation is frequently changed to -ĭ-.

300. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs:

---

[1] In Latin **u** and **v** were represented by a single character (**v**), which was used both as a vowel and as a consonant; but the two forms are here used for convenience (4). In the perfect stem we always find the vowel (**u**) after consonants, the consonant (**v**) after vowels.

agō	dēterreō	moveō	sustineō
adiuvō	dīcō	mūniō	teneō
āmittō	dō	pellō	terreō
audiō	dūcō	perveniō	timeō
augeō	gerō	petō	trādūcō
cadō	habeō	poscō	veniō
caedō	impediō	prōvideō	videō
compleō	iuvō	regō	vincō
contendō	maneō	scrībō	
contineō	mittō	sentiō	

(a) All the other verbs that have occurred so far, with the exception of **sum**, are regular verbs of the first conjugation.

301. 1. Plūrēs prō salūte patriae quam prō argentō cecidērunt. 2. Hodiē in loca minus idōnea iterum pulsī sumus. 3. Quod altitūdine arborum impedīminī, difficultātem nostram graviter sentītis. 4. Sī frūctum labōrum āmīseris, impedīmenta nostra saepe in perīculō erunt. 5. Ubi ad ulteriōrem rīpam contendētis, ibi omnia prōvīderimus. 6. Quod semper in fidē mānsistis, laus vestra apud omnīs īnsīgnis erit. 7. Quod rēs bene gessit cōnsul, inter aciem nostram et agmen hostium paucī cadunt. 8. Sed ad īnfimōs montēs ubi equitēs spoliātī erant, adulēscentēs contendēbant. 9. Subitō mūrī dēfēnsōribus complētī sunt ā quibus multī caedēbuntur. 10. Postquam numerus ita auctus est, sīgnum pūgnae poposcērunt ac manūs illās pepulērunt.

302. 1. The embassy arrived to-day at[1] the council which you called. 2. After you had written a letter to the king, you sent them from winter quarters. 3. I shall thank the leader, because by his arrival he checked our enemies. 4 Thus they killed a youth of the boldest spirit who had been sent by the Gauls. 5. They hurried at full speed[2] for seven days in succession into their own territory. 6. For the citizens were all greatly frightened when we

---

[1] Ad, since **perveniō**, *to arrive*, is a verb of motion. [2] **māgnō cursū**

e eager for war. 7. The wives and children of those
fell will be aided by gifts. 8. We shall be hindered
by fear of slavery than by hope of peace.

REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXI–XL

3.   NOUNS

	condiciō	grātia	nūntius
is	cornū	hīberna	prōvincia
ēscēns	cursus	impedīmentum	regiō
ntus	dēfēnsor	imperātor	Rēgulus
:a	diēs	imperium	rēs
:n	difficultās	impetus	Rhēnus
ūdō	equitātus	lēgātiō	spēs
ōritās	exercitus	māgnitūdō	tribūnus
:	fidēs	manus	
ivus	frūctus	nātiō	

4.   ADJECTIVES

hāginiēnsis	ingēns	paucī	vacuus
er	necessārius	sinister	

5.   ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, AND PREPOSITIONS

er	facile	minus	-que
	fēlīciter	multō	quod
e	graviter	neque	saepe
:cter	hodiē	nōndum	sī
	iterum	paulō	subitō
liē	magis	post	tūtō
que	māgnopere	posteā	ubi
n	male	postquam	

6.   INFLECTIONS

th Declension.	Second Conjugation (Indicative).
Declension.	Third Conjugation (Indicative).
ation of Adverbs.	Fourth Conjugation (Indicative).
parison of Adverbs.	Formation of Principal Parts.

307. CONSTRUCTIONS

Agreement of the Relative with antecedents of different genders.

Antecedent of the Relative not in the same sentence.

Partitive Genitive.

Genitive of Quality.

Ablative of Quality.

Ablative of Degree of Difference.

Ablative of Separation.

Accusative of Limit of Motion in names of towns.

Perveniō with **ad** or **in** and accusative.

Rogō with two accusatives.

Ubi and **postquam** with the perfect indicative.

308. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

grātiam habēre

grātiās agere

castra movēre

sīgna movēre

LESSON XLI

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

(W. 137, 138; B. 84, 85; AG. 142–144; H. 174, 175.)

309.

SINGULAR

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON
NOM., VOC.	ego	tū	———
GEN.	meī	tuī	suī
DAT.	mihĭ (mī)	tibĭ	sibĭ
ACC.	mē	tē	sē (sēsē)
ABL.	mē	tē	sē (sēsē)

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	nōs	vōs	———
GEN.	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī	suī
DAT.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibĭ
ACC.	nōs	vōs	sē (sēsē)
ABL.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)

(a) In the nominative, personal pronouns are used only for emphasis: **Ego haec laudō, tū ista laudās,** *I praise this, you praise that.* Ordinarily the ending of the verb alone indicates the subject.

(*b*) The genitives ending in **-um** (**nostrum, vestrum**) are used as partitive genitives (**268**), those ending in **-ī** (**meī, tuī, nostrī, vestrī, suī**) are used as objective genitives (**173**): **quis nostrum?** *who of us?* **amor nostrī,** *love for us.* Notice that these genitives do not denote possession.

(*c*) There is really no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken by the demonstratives **ille** and **is** (**138, 151**).

(*d*) In the first and second persons the personal pronouns are also used as reflexive pronouns : **Ego mē laudō,** *I praise myself;* **Tū tē laudās,** *You praise yourself.*

310.   POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES
(W. 139, 140; B. 86; AG. 145; H. 176.)

meus, *my*	**noster,** *our*	for the First Person.
tuus, *your* (*thy*)	**vester,** *your*	for the Second Person.
	suus, *his own, their own*	for the Third Person (refl.).

(*a*) Notice that these words, which have already been used, are adjectives and are declined like **bonus** and **niger**. But the vocative singular masculine of **meus** is **mī**.

(*b*) **Suus** is used only in a reflexive sense, referring to the subject of the sentence in which it stands : **Suum fīlium laudat,** *He praises his own son ;* but **Eīus fīlium laudat,** *He praises his* (another man's) *son.*

311.   VOCABULARY

aut (**aut . . . aut**), conj. *or* (*either . . . or*).

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f. *conspiracy* (**coniūrō**).

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *to cease, cease from, give up* (with abl.).

dīgnus, -a, -um, *worthy.*[1]

indīgnus, -a, -um, *unworthy.*[1]

ipse, ipsa, ipsum,[2] *himself, herself, itself; the very.*

iste, ista, istud,[2] *that* (of yours).

multitūdō, -inis, f. *crowd, multitude* (**multus**).

nē . . . quidem, adv. *not even.*[3]

obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *to hold, keep* (especially against opposition).

oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f. *storming, attack.*

---

[1] Both used with the ablative : **laude dīgnus,** *worthy of praise.*

[2] These words are declined like **ille,** except that the neuter singular of **ipse** ends in **-um.** Declined in full, **546.**

[3] The emphatic word stands between **nē** and **quidem.**

8

312. 1. Ego arcem istam hodiē occupābō quam tū nunc obtinēs. 2. Tū, lēgāte, impedīmenta tēcum[1] ipse portābis, sed ille obsidēs sēcum[1] dūcit. 3. Aut nōs meliōre cūrā dīgnī sumus aut vōs hāc auctōritāte indīgnī estis. 4. Regetne cōnsul ipse multitūdinem istōrum quibuscum lēgātiō illa iam pervēnit? 5. Quis vestrum dē hīs rēbus quae ā nōbīs audītae sunt nūntius erit? 6. Unde vōbīs aquam petitis aut quā dē causā oppūgnātiōne dēstitistis? 7. Nē prīnceps quidem coniūrātiōnem vestram sēnsit nec rēs sibi necessāriās prōvīdit. 8. Scrīpseratne ad tē dē coniūrātiōne oppūgnātiōneque nostrā, quā nōndum dēstitimus? 9. Paulō ante mihi auxilium rogāvī quod vōs hastīs gladiīsque armābātis. 10. Illī adulēscentēs quibuscum vōs ad mare contendēbātis, ipsī sunt omnium cīvium pessimī. 11. Istī sunt dissimillimī hūius multitūdinis, quae nē mortem quidem māgnopere timēbit.

313. 1. Who of you will report about that conspiracy (of yours)? 2. If you will desist from your plan, we shall desist from ours. 3. I shall hold this place for myself, because I am worthy of authority. 4. We shall either conquer you or shall ourselves be cut down by you. 5. Not even the Gauls themselves help those with whom you came. 6. Therefore you are unworthy of the command which they have themselves often given you. 7. The multitude which he led across the Rhine with him frightened us greatly. 8. They neither praise themselves nor are they praised.

---

[1] The preposition **cum** is regularly thus attached to the ablatives **mē**, **tē**, **sē**, **nōbīs**, **vōbīs**, and to the ablatives of the relative pronouns: **mēcum**, **vōbīscum**, **quōcum**, **quibuscum**, etc.

LESSON XLII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

314. Learn the present and the imperfect subjunctive of **sum** (561), and of **amō**, active and passive (550).

(W. 173–175; B. 100–102; AG. 170, 184; H. 205–208.)

(*a*) Notice carefully the following facts:

(1) That the personal endings of the subjunctive are the same as those of the indicative. In the first person singular, however, the endings in the subjunctive are always -**m** (active) and -**r** (passive), never -**ō** and -**or**.

(2) That in the present subjunctive the stem of **sum** is **sī**- and the stem of **amō** is **amē**-.

(3) That the tense sign of the imperfect subjunctive has the same letters as the ending of the infinitive: -**sē**- for **sum** and -**rē**- for **amō**. Hence the complete stems are **essē**- and **amārē**-.

315.   VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

1. **Rēx sit.**   **Nē rēx sit.**
   Let him be king.   *Let him not be king.*
2. **Hunc laudēmus.**   **Nē hunc laudēmus.**
   Let us praise him.   *Let us not praise him.*

(*a*) Notice that the subjunctive in these sentences expresses the will of the speaker that something shall or shall not be done. It is therefore called the *Volitive Subjunctive* (**volō**, *to will*). In the first person it is often called the *Hortatory Subjunctive*, in the second and third persons the *Jussive Subjunctive*, but the nature of the subjunctive in all is the same.[1]

316. RULE. — The Volitive Subjunctive represents an act or state as willed; the negative is *nē*.

(W. 481, 482; B. 273–275; AG. 439; H. 559.)

---

[1] Only the first and third persons of the present tense are commonly used, since the imperative, which will be learned later, supplies the second person.

317.   VOCABULARY

Cicerō, -ōnis, m. *Cicero.*
nē, conj. and adv. *not.*[1]
probō, -āre, *to approve, approve of.*

renūntiō, -āre, *to report* (**nūntiō**).
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae,[2] *the state, commonwealth, republic.*
tēlum, -ī, n. *weapon.*

318. 1. Cicerō sit cōnsul; rem pūblicam servet. 2. Servōs armēmus; nē ab hostibus nōs spoliēmur, sed ipsōs hostīs spoliēmus. 3. Coniūrātiōnem vōbīs renūntiēmus; maximam cōpiam tēlōrum parēmus. 4. Inopiā frūmentī graviter labōrent[3]; nē eōs adiuvēmus. 5. Dēnique servitūte sē līberet; concilium convocētur; caput coniūrātiōnis sit. 6. Nē sine spē sīmus, sed mūrīs fortiter adpropinquēmus. 7. Sī agrōs nostrōs vāstābunt, vōbīscum castra occupēmus. 8. Nē nōs vītā prīvēmus; ita cīvitātem līberābimus omnī timōre neque indīgnī erimus laude. 9. Cōnsulī haec narrentur; rēs necessāriās summā industriā cūret. 10. Nē coniūrātiōnem probēmus, sed exercitum ac tē, imperātor, revocēmus.

319. 1. Let Cicero save the state; let him be our leader. 2. Let us not call him general; let us report this to you. 3. Let us either arm ourselves with weapons or call a council. 4. Let him not wound himself, but let him help you. 5. Let affairs be managed well; let him approve of the embassy. 6. Let him not despoil us of our weapons; let us be brave and worthy of honor. 7. Let us care for the state and free the slaves from servitude. 8. Let the young man seize the fields whither he has been sent with you.

---

[1] The conditions under which it is used will be noted as they occur.
[2] Each of the two words is declined: dat. **reī pūblicae**; acc. **rem pūblicam**, etc.
[3] **Labōrō** often means, as here, *to be hard pressed, to suffer.*

LESSON XLIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (Continued)

320. Learn the present and the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of **habeō, regō,** and **audiō (552, 554, 558).**

(*a*) Notice that in these three conjugations the sign of the present subjunctive is -ā- ; **habe-ā-, reg-ā-,**[1] **audi-ā-** ; while in the first conjugation, as we saw, the final vowel of the stem itself is changed, **amā-** becoming **amē-.**

(*b*) In the imperfect subjunctive the sign is -rĕ-, as in **amō.**

321.   OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

1. **Fortis sīs.**   **Nē fortis sīs.**
   May you be brave.   *May you not be brave.*
2. **Haec habeāmus.**   **Nē haec habeāmus.**
   May we have this.   *May we not have this.*
3. **Utinam ille regeret.**   **Utinam ille nē regeret.**
   Would that he were king.   *Would that he were not king.*
4. **Utinam haec audīrētis.**   **Utinam haec nē audīrētis.**
   Would that you were hear-   *Would that you were not hear-*
   ing this.   *ing this.*

(*a*) Notice that here the subjunctive expresses the wish or desire of the speaker. It is therefore called the *Optative Subjunctive* (**optō,** *to wish, desire*).

(*b*) Notice also that the present tense refers to future, the imperfect to present time. Compare the English used in translating the two tenses.

(*c*) In the optative subjunctive all three persons may be used. Compare the volitive subjunctive.

(*d*) **Utinam** is regularly used with the imperfect, occasionally with the present, of the optative subjunctive.

322. RULE. — **The Optative Subjunctive represents an action as wished or desired. The negative is** *nē.*

(W. 484; B. 279; AG. 441; H. 558.)

---

[1] The variable vowel at the end of the stem in the third conjugation disappears before the vowel in the present subjunctive, and appears as **ĕ** in the imperfect subjunctive, before **r** (see **279** *a,* and **99** *a* and note).

323.   VOCABULARY

clam, adv. *secretly.*

memoria, -ae, f. *memory.*

palam, adv. *openly.*

potius, adv. *rather.*

prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus
(**prō + habeō**), *to prevent,
hinder, keep from* (with the
abl., or abl. and **ab**).

quamquam, conj. *although.*

tamen, adv. *still, nevertheless.*

utinam, adv. used with the
optative subjunctive, like the
English *would that.*

324. 1. Ibi regās ac rem pūblicam bene administrēs.
2. Utinam hīc potius quam ille cōnsul esset. 3. Utinam
vōs tūtō mūnīrēminī; audāciam nē āmittātis. 4. Aut ā
perīculō vōs prohibeant aut ad nōs palam veniātis. 5. Quam-
quam clāmōre et cursū dēstitimus, nē tamen pellāmur.
6. Utinam multitūdō aut coniūrātiōnem nē sentīret aut du-
cem clam posceret. 7. Utinam et memoriā omnia tenērētis
et nōbīs grātiam habērētis. 8. In fīnīs illōrum contendat;
nē tēlīs inimīcōrum caedātur.[1] 9. Utinam moenia ab dēfēn-
sōribus nē vacua essent; utinam impetum sustinērētis.
10. Quamquam plūrima tēla iam cadunt, vōs tamen nē oc-
cultētis. 11. Illōs potius quam nōs ab aquā prohibeātis;
auxiliō vestrō nē prīvēmur.

325. 1. May the garrison[2] hold the camp; let them not
be frightened. 2. May you all be present and see the result
of our labor. 3. Would that you rather than they were
sending an embassy. 4. May you not be conquered; may
you not even be despoiled of your weapons. 5. Would that
they were secretly arriving; let us not lose courage. 6. Al-
though the young men are armed, still may they not wound
us. 7. May we always keep these things in memory and
often thank you. 8. Would that he were eager for praise;
may he not openly be driven across the river.

---

[1] In such sentences as this it is often difficult to tell whether the
subjunctives are optative or volitive. In a Latin author, the context
shows which is meant.   [2] **praesidium.**

LESSON XLIV

SUBJUNCTIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES

326.

1. **Pūgnant (pūgnāvērunt) ut līberī sint.**

   They are fighting (have fought) that they may be (to be) free.

   Pūgnant (pūgnāvērunt) nē servī sint.

   They are fighting (have fought) that they may not be slaves.

2. **Pūgnābunt ut līberī sint.**

   They will fight to be free.

   Pūgnābunt nē servī sint.

   They will fight so that they may not be slaves.

3. **Pūgnābant (pūgnāvērunt) ut līberī essent.**

   They were fighting (fought) in order to be free.

   Pūgnābant (pūgnāvērunt) nē servī essent.

   They were fighting (fought) that they might not be slaves.

4. **Pūgnant quō sē celerius līberent.**

   They are fighting that they may free themselves the more quickly.

(*a*) Notice that in each of these sentences the dependent clause expresses the purpose of the action in the main clause; also that the conjunction **ut** introduces positive, **nē**, negative, clauses. When the purpose clause contains a comparative, **quō** is used instead of **ut**.

(*b*) Notice further that when the action of the main clause is in the present (present perfect) or future, the subjunctive in the subordinate clause is present[1]; when the action of the main clause is in the past (or past perfect), the subjunctive which follows is imperfect. This relation between the tense of the subjunctive in the subordinate clause and the tense of the main clause is called the *Sequence of Tenses.*

(*c*) Notice carefully in how many ways a clause of purpose may be translated into English.

327. RULE. — **The Subjunctive is used with *ut* (or *quō*), *that*, *nē*, *that not*, to express Purpose.**

(W. 506; B. 282; AG. 531; H. 568.)

---

[1] The present subjunctive does service then for both the present and the future.

328. VOCABULARY

cūr, adv. *why*.

discessus, -ūs, m. *departure*.

fuga, -ae, f. *flight, rout* (fugō).

impetrō, -āre, *to obtain* (one's request).

nē, conj. *that . . . not*.

quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth*.

quō, conj. *that, in order that*.[1]

secundus, -a, -um, *favorable, second*.

ut, conj. *that, so that, in order that*.

329. 1. Quārtā hōrā perveniet ut aditum Carthāginiēn-sium renūntiet. 2. Haec sentiat nē imperiō auctōritāteque indīgnus sit. 3. Maximō cum studiō labōrēs ut condiciōnēs meliōrēs impetrēs. 4. Exercitum in aciem cotīdiē dūcēbat quō fēlīcius vōbīscum pūgnāret. 5. Cūr magis necessāriās rēs nōn prōvidētis nē oppūgnātiōnem timeātis? 6. Utinam nōs potius quam istōs armārētis ut multitūdinem in fugam pellerēmus. 7. Proelium nōbīs secundum sit quō facilior sit discessus. 8. Secundō vēre cōpiās Rhēnum trādūcet nē illī agrōs vāstent. 9. Adsīmus cum plūrimīs amīcīs nē mulierēs līberīque sociōrum ab illō atrōcī homine videantur. 10. Germānōs ab aquā ac frūmentō prohibuerat nē discessum istōrum impedīrent.

330. 1. We are arming you that you may help us. 2. He brought gifts with him that he might obtain these things. 3. May the gods be favorable so that your departure may be the quicker. 4. In the fourth watch I wrote a letter, that I might not openly beg for peace. 5. When this was secretly reported, he demanded help that he might more easily pacify them. 6. On[2] the left wing they will all work to-day that they may not be driven into flight. 7. Why had he not kept them from the town so that they might thus be defeated?

---

[1] Used only when the purpose clause contains a comparative.

[2] in with abl.

LESSON XLV

SUBJUNCTIVE IN RESULT CLAUSES

331.

1. **Eum ita terrēmus (terruimus) ut veniat.**

   We are frightening him so (have frightened him so) that he is coming.

   Eum ita terrēmus (terruimus) ut nōn veniat.

   We are frightening him so (have frightened him so) that he is not coming.

2. **Eum ita terrēbāmus (terruimus) ut venīret.**

   We were frightening him so (frightened him so) that he came.

   Eum ita terrēbāmus (terruimus) ut nōn venīret.

   We were frightening him so (frightened him so) that he did not come.

(*a*) Notice that in each of these sentences the dependent clause expresses the result of the action of the main clause ; also that **ut** introduces positive, **ut nōn**, negative, results. The main clause often contains such a word as **ita**, *so*, which shows that a result clause is to follow.

(*b*) Compare these with clauses of purpose and notice that **nē** is used only with negative purpose, **ut nōn** only with negative result clauses ; notice also that in result clauses, as in those of purpose, the sequence of tenses is observed.

332. RULE. — **The Subjunctive is used with *ut*, *that*, *ut nōn*, *that not*, to express Result.**

(W. 519 ; B. 284 ; AG. 537 : 1 ; H. 570.)

333. VOCABULARY

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *to close, shut.*	**portus, -ūs,** m. *harbor.*
imprōvīsō, adv. *unexpectedly.*	**sīc,** adv. *in this way, thus.*
obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *to besiege, blockade.*	**tam,** adv. *so, such.*[1]
porta, -ae, f. *gate, door.*	**tantus, -a, -um,** *so great.*
	vēlōciter, adv. *swiftly* (**vēlōx**).
	vix, adv. *hardly, with difficulty.*

[1] Regularly used to modify adjectives and adverbs, while **ita** and **sīc** more often modify verbs.

334. 1. Tantam turrim aedificāverant ut ā nōbīs vix
expūgnārētur.   2. Sīc fidē nostrā subitō mōtī estis ut
portās nōn clauderētis.   3. Posteā tanta multitūdō tēlōrum
in nostrōs cecidit ut multī graviter vulnerārentur.   4. Paucīs
diēbus tamen vincentur, ut coniugēs līberōsque sēcum nōn
trādūcant.   5. Tam parvōs portūs habent nē plūrimae nāvēs
longae oppidīs suīs adpropinquent.   6. Quamquam vōs tam
imprōvīsō obsessī estis ut sīgna nōn darētis, tamen adiuvā-
biminī.   7. Māgnitūdō hūius silvae tam ingēns est ut iter
longissimum sit.   8. Pessimī illīus gentis victōriam memoriā
sīc tenuerant ut contrā nōs nōn coniūrārent.   9. Equitēs sine
impedīmentīs tam vēlōciter ad mare contendērunt ut iam
obsideāmur.   10. Oppidānī timōre nostrī sīc incitātī sunt
ut discessus fugae similis esset maximēque impedīrētur.

335. 1. We approached swiftly that you might not close
the gates.   2. He has led so few soldiers across the river
that you are hardly besieged.   3. The rest suddenly arrived
in the harbor with so great a fleet that you gave up[1] your
plan.   4. In this way our departure was hindered so that
we stayed among the townsmen during this night.   5. We
shall rather come by the longer way through the plain, in
order to have an easier journey.   6. So great an embassy
had hurried to Caesar unexpectedly that they obtained this
request.   7. He has closed the gates so unexpectedly that
the flight of your men[2] is hindered.   8. In that war so few
fell that we were not terrified.

---

[1] dēsistō.   [2] Use the proper form of iste.

LESSON XLVI

SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES

336.   RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

1. **Equitēs praemittit quī videant.** — *He sends forward horsemen to see (who are to see).*

2. **Epistulam scrīpsit quam tū legerēs.** — *He wrote a letter which you were to read (for you to read).*

(*a*) Notice in these sentences that the relative clauses introduced by **quī** and **quam** have the subjunctive, and that they express purpose. A relative word frequently introduces a purpose clause when the antecedent of the relative is expressed or implied in the main clause.

337. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

1. **Sunt quī dīcant.** — *There are men who say.*

2. **Nēmō est quī haec dīcat.** — *There is no one who says this.*

3. **Quis erat quī haec nōn dīceret?** — *Who was there that did not say this?*

4. **Nōn is est quī haec dīcat.** — *He is not a person to say this (who would say this).*

(*a*) Notice that the antecedent of the relative is either negative or otherwise indefinite.   When this is the case, the relative clauses usually answer the question, *Of what kind?*   Such clauses are called *Clauses of Characteristic.*

(*b*) But when the antecedent and the relative clause refer to a definite, individual person or thing which the speaker has in mind, the indicative is used.

(INDIC.) **Hīc nōn est liber quem legimus.**   *This is not the book which we are reading.*

(SUBJ.) **Hīc nōn est liber quem legāmus.**   *This is not a book that we read (would read).*

338. RULE. — A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive may be used to indicate a Characteristic of the antecedent, when that antecedent is indefinite or negative.

(W. 587, 588; B. 283; AG. 535; H. 591.)

339. VOCABULARY

dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (dē + dō), *to give up ;* sē dēdere, *to sur-render (one's self).*

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *to defend* (dēfēnsor).

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *to read.*

nēmō, —,[1] m. and f. *no one.*

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *to harm* (with dat.).

nūllus, -a, -um,[2] *not any, no, none.*

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus (ob + caedō), *to kill.*

praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (prae + mittō), *to send forward.*

quantus, -a, -um (interrog. and rel.), *how much? as much as, as.*

340. 1. Rēx comitēs praemittit quī rem pūblicam dēfendant. 2. Inter iūdicēs nēmō erat quī iuvenī nocēret. 3. Utinam incolumēs venīrent ut prō rē pūblicā dīmicārēmus. 4. Locus nōn est in omnibus terrīs quem magis amēmus quam eum ubi nunc habitāmus. 5. Cūius moenia saepe iam dēfendimus nē cum rē pūblicā vītam ipsam āmitterēmus. 6. Cūr tantum erat odium nostrī ut omnēs potius occīderentur quam sē dēderent? 7. Quantō studiō ex castrīs contendunt iuvenēs quō celerius omnia superiōra loca occupent. 8. Quis erit quī nōbīs clam noceat aut imprōvīsō urbem obsideat? 9. Epistulam brevem ad tē scrībam quam celeriter legās nē amīcīs tuīs noceās. 10. Istī tantam cōpiam comparābunt quantam ex agrīs in hīberna Gallī portāvērunt.

341. 1. Who is there of us that has a famous name? 2. No part of the troops will be sent forward that their

---

[1] Besides the nominative, nēmō has only the dative singular nēminī and the accusative singular nēminem. All the other forms are supplied from nūllus.

[2] The genitive singular is nūllīus in all three genders, the dative nūllī ; otherwise it is declined like bonus. The declension is given in full, **539.** Compare the genitive and the dative of the pronouns is, ille, quī, etc.

nation may have less booty.   3. With how much spirit he sent a letter for you to read.   4. These are not men to surrender quickly or to be easily killed.   5. Why is there no one here to close the gates and defend the women? 6. Would that there were such a multitude of foot-soldiers that he would not harm you.   7. May they bring with them to-day as great a supply as we have demanded.   8. Let us keep in mind the conspiracy that by it we may be aroused.

LESSON XLVII

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

342.   SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

1. **Ducī persuādent (persuā-sērunt) ut auxilium mittat.**   *They are persuading (have persuaded) the leader to send help.*

2. **Imperātum est ut lēgātī bellum gererent.**   *It was ordered that the lieutenants carry on the war.*

3. **Eum ōrābant (ōrāvērunt) nē oppidum oppūgnā-ret.**   *They were asking (asked) him not to attack the town.*

(*a*) Notice that in each of these sentences the dependent clause expresses a purpose or desire, and is at the same time the subject or object of the verb in the principal clause.   Such dependent clauses are called *Substantive Clauses of Purpose.*   The sequence of tenses is observed as in all other clauses of purpose.

343. RULE. — Substantive Clauses of Purpose with *ut* (negative *nē*) are used after verbs expressing intention or desire.

(W. 511; B. 295; AG. 563; H. 564 ff.)

344. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *quīn*

1. **Nōn dubitō quīn sociī haec renūntient.** — *I do not doubt that the allies are reporting this.*
2. **Nōn dubitābō quīn sociī haec renūntient.** — *I shall not doubt that the allies will report this.*
3. **Nōn erat dubium quīn sociī haec renūntiārent.** — *There was no doubt that the allies reported this.*
4. **Eōs nōn dēterrēbant quīn haec renūntiārent.** — *They did not deter them from reporting this.*

(*a*) Notice that in each of these sentences, where **quīn** is used, the main clause is negative.

345. RULE. — Substantive clauses introduced by *quīn* are used depending on a negative verb, or verbal expression, of doubting, hindering, and the like.

(W. 575–579; B. 298; AG. 558; H. 595, 596.)

346. VOCABULARY

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (cum + mittō), *to engage in* (battle), *bring about.*
dubitō, -āre, *to doubt.*
Ēpīrus, -ī, f. *Epirus.*[1]
ōrō, -āre, *to beg, beseech.*
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsū- rus, *to persuade* (with dat. of person).
Pyrrhus, -ī, m. *Pyrrhus.*
quīn, conj. *that, from.*
senātus, -ūs, m. *senate.*
sōlus, -a, -um,[2] *alone, only.*
Tarentīnī, -ōrum, m. *Tarentines.*[3]

347. 1. Tarentīnī ōrābant Rōmānōs nē in portum suum mitterent classem. 2. Sed eōs nōn dēterruērunt quīn plūrēs nāvīs convocārent. 3. Ubi nōn dubium fuit quīn illī contrā urbem nāvigārent, portās clausērunt ut sē dēfenderent. 4. Pyrrhō, rēgī Ēpīrī, etiam persuāsērunt ut auxilium sibi

[1] A district of northwestern Greece. [2] Declined like **nūllus (539).**
[3] Inhabitants of Tarentum, a city of southern Italy.

daret; nam ille dīxit: 5. "Nēmō est dīgnior quī hanc rem
ā mē impetret ac māgnā cūrā servētur.[1] 6. Itaque classī
tantae quantam habeō imperābō ut proelium cum Rōmānīs
imprōvīsō committat. 7. Nōn dubitābō quīn nōs sōlī eōs
facile māgnitūdine nāvium vincāmus." 8. Quamquam prīmō
proeliō quod commīsērunt Rōmānī, graviter superātī sunt,
pācem tamen nōn ōrābant. 9. Nec lēgātiō persuāsit senā-
tuī ut exercitum ab oppūgnātiōne revocāret. 10. Quod nōn
dubitābant quīn mīlitēs rēgis multō pēiōrēs essent quam suī,
cōnsiliō nōn dēsistēbant.

348. 1. The ambassadors did not persuade Pyrrhus to
set the captives free. 2. It was not doubtful to him that
they were coming with a stronger army. 3. But he was
not deterred from engaging in battle with them. 4. They
alone were worthy to conquer the Tarentines and increase
the state. 5. Finally he does order his leaders to set the
captives free and send them to the city. 6. Suddenly he
says: "I shall not persuade the senate to establish[2] peace
if I shall remain in Italy." 7. Therefore ships were secretly
sent him to carry his army across the sea. 8. He was not
the man to deprive the Romans of their reputation.

LESSON XLVIII

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

349. Verbs having passive form but active meaning
are called deponents.

350. Learn the indicative entire, the present and the
imperfect subjunctive, and the present infinitive of
hortor and **vereor** (**560**).

---

[1] **Dīgnus** is frequently followed by a relative clause with the sub-
junctive, which is translated by the English infinitive or a phrase.
[2] **cōnfīrmō**.

344. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *quīn*

1. **Nōn dubitō quīn sociī haec renūntient.** *I do not doubt that the allies are reporting this.*
2. **Nōn dubitābō quīn sociī haec renūntient.** *I shall not doubt that the allies will report this.*
3. **Nōn erat dubium quīn sociī haec renūntiārent.** *There was no doubt that the allies reported this.*
4. **Eōs nōn dēterrēbant quīn haec renūntiārent.** *They did not deter them from reporting this.*

(*a*) Notice that in each of these sentences, where **quīn** is used, the main clause is negative.

345. RULE. — Substantive clauses introduced by *quīn* are used depending on a negative verb, or verbal expression, of doubting, hindering, and the like.

(W. 575–579; B. 298; AG. 558; H. 595, 596.)

346.   VOCABULARY

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (cum + mittō), *to engage in* (battle), *bring about.*
dubitō, -āre, *to doubt.*
Ēpīrus, -ī, f. *Epirus.*[1]
ōrō, -āre, *to beg, beseech.*
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, *to persuade* (with dat. of person).
Pyrrhus, -ī, m. *Pyrrhus.*
quīn, conj. *that, from.*
senātus, -ūs, m. *senate.*
sōlus, -a, -um,[2] *alone, only.*
Tarentīnī, -ōrum, m. *Tarentines.*[3]

347. 1. Tarentīnī ōrābant Rōmānōs nē in portum suum mitterent classem.   2. Sed eōs nōn dēterruērunt quīn plūrēs nāvīs convocārent.   3. Ubi nōn dubium fuit quīn illī contrā urbem nāvigārent, portās clausērunt ut sē dēfenderent. 4. Pyrrhō, rēgī Ēpīrī, etiam persuāsērunt ut auxilium sibi

---

[1] A district of northwestern Greece.   [2] Declined like **nūllus** (**539**).
[3] Inhabitants of Tarentum, a city of southern Italy.

daret; nam ille dīxit: 5. "Nēmō est dignior quī hanc rem
ā mē impetret ac māgnā cūrā servētur.[1] 6. Itaque classī
tantae quantam habeō imperābō ut proelium cum Rōmānīs
imprōvīsō committat. 7. Nōn dubitābō quīn nōs sōlī eōs
facile māgnitūdine nāvium vincāmus." 8. Quamquam prīmō
proeliō quod commīsērunt Rōmānī, graviter superātī sunt,
pācem tamen nōn ōrābant. 9. Nec lēgātiō persuāsit senā-
tuī ut exercitum ab oppūgnātiōne revocāret. 10. Quod nōn
dubitābant quīn mīlitēs rēgis multō pēiōrēs essent quam suī,
cōnsiliō nōn dēsistēbant.

348. 1. The ambassadors did not persuade Pyrrhus to
set the captives free. 2. It was not doubtful to him that
they were coming with a stronger army. 3. But he was
not deterred from engaging in battle with them. 4. They
alone were worthy to conquer the Tarentines and increase
the state. 5. Finally he does order his leaders to set the
captives free and send them to the city. 6. Suddenly he
says: "I shall not persuade the senate to establish[2] peace
if I shall remain in Italy." 7. Therefore ships were secretly
sent him to carry his army across the sea. 8. He was not
the man to deprive the Romans of their reputation.

LESSON XLVIII

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

349. Verbs having passive form but active meaning
are called deponents.

350. Learn the indicative entire, the present and the
imperfect subjunctive, and the present infinitive of
hortor and **vereor** (560).

---

[1] **Dīgnus** is frequently followed by a relative clause with the sub-
junctive, which is translated by the English infinitive or a phrase.
[2] **cōnfīrmō**.

357.   ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS

1. **Hōc gladiō ūtitur.**   *He uses this sword.*
2. **Omnibus rēbus fruēbantur.**   *They were enjoying all things.*
3. **Urbe hostium potītī sunt.**   *They got possession of the enemy's city.*

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences the ablative is used where in English we use the accusative (objective) case. The ablative is so used with the five deponents mentioned in the rule below.

358. RULE. — **The Ablative is used with *ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor,* and their compounds.**[1]

(W. 387; B. 218:1; AG. 410; H. 477.)

359.   VOCABULARY

cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus (cum + sequor), *to overtake.*

experior, -īrī, -pertus, *to try.*

fruor, -ī, frūctus, *to enjoy.*

numquam (ne + umquam), adv. *never.*

potior, -īrī, potītus, *to get possession of.*

profĭcīscor, -ī, -fectus, *to set out, depart, start.*

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam,[2] *a certain, a.*

relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus, *to leave.*

sequor, -ī, secūtus, *to follow.*

umquam, adv. *ever.*

ūtor, -ī, ūsus, *to use, make use of, employ.*

360. 1. Sī hostīs longius sequēris, verēbor nē sōlī relinquāmur. 2. Ante lūcem profĭcīscāmur ut paulō post septimam hōram agmen sociōrum cōnsequāmur. 3. Nāvibus quās vōs relīquistis nōs ūtēmur, quō tūtius in patriam perveniāmus. 4. Quamquam arce iam potītī erant quīdam, pars moenium tamen ab incolīs tenēbātur. 5. Aut salūte fru-

---

[1] As **fungor**, *to perform*, and **vēscor**, *to feed*, are not common in the Latin authors which pupils first read, they are not used in this book; but the complete rule should be learned for future convenience.

[2] Declined in full, **549.**

āmur aut omnia experiāmur ut rem pūblicam statim līberē-
mus. 6. Nūllī prīncipī persuāsērunt ut amīcitiam fidemque
nostram relinqueret. 7. Numquam vōbīscum proficīscar
neque iterum proelium experiar, sī vōs clientēs nōn tuēbi-
minī. 8. Nam vehementer veritī sumus nē sociī nostrī
condiciōnibus gravibus ūtantur. 9. Quis vestrum Rōmānōs
umquam secūtus erat quī nōbīs māgnopere nocuērunt?
10. Sī pāce quiēteque frūctī eritis, numquam adulēscentēs
hortābiminī ut sē tēlīs arment.

361. 1. We shall overtake certain chiefs who have
got possession of the baggage. 2. In this way no one
will be left to persuade the rest to start out. 3. They
surrendered themselves so quickly that they never were
besieged or hard pressed. 4. Who of you will ever enjoy
the things which the Romans have left to-day? 5. A cer-
tain woman sent a messenger to overtake and encourage us.
6. No man feared that Caesar was secretly using your
money. 7. In the fourth watch they set out openly, but
their very departure seemed most difficult. 8. They were
not prevented by fear alone from often harming our men.

LESSON L

DEPONENTS (Continued) AND REVIEW OF VERBS

362.   SEMI–DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms in the pres-
ent system and passive forms in the perfect system, but
have active meaning throughout. There are but four
regular semi-deponents:

audeō, audēre, ausus, to *dare*.   **soleō, solēre, solitus,** *to be*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus, *to*   *wont, accustomed.*
   rejoice.   **fīdō, fīdere, fīsus,**[1] *to trust.*

---

[1] The compound **cōnfīdō** is ordinarily used in place of the simple
fīdō.

363. Give the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs:

adiuvō	dubitō	obtineō	relinquō
administrō	experior	occīdō	renūntiō
armō	fruor	occultō	revocō
audiō	hiemō	occupō	rogō
claudō	hortor	ōrō	sentiō
committō	impediō	persuādeō	sequor
cōnfīrmō	imperō	perveniō	spoliō
conlocō	impetrō	potior	tueor
cōnsequor	legō	praemittō	ūtor
dēdō	moneō	premō	veniō
dēfendō	mūniō	probō	vereor
dēsistō	noceō	proficīscor	vulnerō
dīmicō	obsideō	prohibeō	

364. 1. Portum plūrimīs nāvibus claudāmus nē sine auxiliō proficīscī[1] audeant. 2. Posterā hieme hīberna ita tuēbātur ut pontem et arcem occupāre verērēmur. 3. Utinam vōbīs, puerī, persuādērem ut librōs poētae cum dīligentiā legerētis. 4. Neque illī neque hī dubitāre solitī sunt quīn vītā līberā fruāmur. 5. Omnia relinquere nē parēmus, quod quaedam etiam in eīs locīs necessāria erunt. 6. Sī imperātor ille in pūgnā gravī ceciderit, coniugēs, līberōs, omniaque vestra dēdētis.[2] 7. Quid agitis aut cūr dēsistere eō cōnsiliō nunc vidēminī, quod in conciliō priōre annō dedistis?[3] 8. Ob eās rēs quibus fruī solitī estis, vix bellum palam committētis nec lēgātōs occīdētis. 9. Quamquam illī quōs senātus iam revocāverat neque odiō nec poenā dīgnī erant, salūte prīvātī

---

[1] Verbs which, like **audeō**, imply another action of *the same subject* to complete their meaning, have the present infinitive depending on them (*Complementary Infinitive*), as in English. Such verbs are **audeō, parō, soleō,** and **videor** (*to seem*).

[2] From **dēdō.**   [3] From **dō.**

sunt.   10. Nēmō hīc est quī coniūrātiōnem aut probāre aut
impedīre audeat.

365. 1. Who of you dares to urge us not to start from
here ? 2. If you hurry[1] swiftly for seven days in succession,
you will overtake us. 3. Why did you beg them to follow
you into the higher places ? 4. They had never been accus-
tomed to fear, so that their line of battle hurried boldly to
the wall. 5. Although they were not yet using their grain,
they asked[2] us for a larger supply. 6. These tribes are un-
worthy of confidence, for they have often injured our friends.
7. But if you urge me to try again, I shall press the enemy
hard with the cavalry. 8. They alone will not dare to hin-
der us from recalling our cohorts from their territory.

LESSON LI

THIRD CONJUGATION (Verbs in *-iō*)

366. Learn the conjugation of **capiō**, in the indicative
entire, the present and the imperfect subjunctive, and
the present infinitive (**556**).

(*a*) Verbs like **capiō** belong to the third conjugation, but they
differ from the regular verbs in that the stem vowel always ap-
pears as -i-, except before -r-, where it appears as -e-.[3] Compare
regō (**279** *a*, *b*).
(*b*) Notice also that in two forms, **capiunt** and **capiuntur**, these
verbs resemble those of the fourth conjugation.
(*c*) The same peculiarities are found also in deponent verbs of
this class.

---

[1] What tense in Latin ?   [2] Compare 263, n. 1.
[3] Besides the present active infinitive, **capere**, and the imperfect
subjunctive, **caperem**, etc., the stem with -e- occurs only once, in
caperis, *you are taken.*

367.   VOCABULARY

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *to take, seize.*

cupiō, -ere, -īvī (iī), -ītus, *to desire, be eager.*

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (dē + dūcō), *to lead away, withdraw.*

dubitō, -āre, *to hesitate.*[1]

Fabius, -ī, m. *Fabius.*

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *to make, do.*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *to flee* (fuga).

Hannibal, -alis, m. *Hannibal.*

ratiō, -ōnis, f. *method, way.*

Saguntum, -ī, n. *Saguntum* (a city in Spain).

tergum, -ī, n. *back.*[2]

uter, utra, utrum,[3] *which of two* (rel. and interrog.).

368. 1. Haec vōbīs dīcere cupiō quae in librīs antīquīs dē Fabiō lēgī. 2. Quī postquam Hannibal Saguntum cēpit, senātum monuit ut lēgātiō in Āfricam mitterētur. 3. Cūius lēgātiōnis, quamquam Rōmānī timēbant nē hōc sibi nocēret, ipse erat prīnceps. 4. Dēnique senātuī Carthāginiēnsium ita dīcere ausus est: " Hīc et bellum et pācem portō. 5. Utrum vōbīs optimum vidētur, ōrō ut capiātis." Nec dubitābat senātus statim facere bellum. 6. Fabius novā ratiōne bellī ūsus est ut morā rem pūblicam dēfenderet. 7. Sī hostēs terga dabant et fugiēbant, eōs sequēbātur; sī proelium committere cupiēbant, suum agmen dēdūcēbat. 8. Itaque maximā fāmā fruēbātur et omnia agēbat quibus Rōmānōrum animus cōnfīrmārētur. 9. Neque Hannibal dubitābat omnia experīrī ut imprōvīsō hostīs et cōnsequerētur et fugāret. 10. Uter vōbīs melior dux vidētur? Hīc audācior erat, ille suā ratiōne bellī cīvīs tuēbātur.

369. 1. Fabius advised his troops to protect Rome by delay. 2. He never doubted that the enemy often turned

---

[1] **Dubitō**, *to hesitate*, has the infinitive depending on it (compare **401** *a*); but **nōn dubitō**, *not to doubt* (**344**), has **quīn** with the subjunctive.

[2] **tergum dare**, *to turn the back, flee.*   [3] Declined, **539**.

their backs and fled. 3. Although Hannibal captured many
towns, Fabius did not lead his forces far away from the
hills. 4. The Romans were not accustomed to use this
method of war, so they did not approve of the delay.
5. Therefore they sent a messenger who was to order Fabius
to engage in battle. 6. Still he did not hesitate to flee, if
Hannibal was eager to fight.   7. Finally Hannibal did not
dare to approach Rome, but withdrew his soldiers to the
farthest city of Italy.

REVIEW OF LESSONS XLI–LI

370.   NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

Cicerō	Hannibal	porta	suī
coniūrātiō	memoria	portus	Tarentīnī
discessus	multitūdō	Pyrrhus	tēlum
ego	nēmō	ratiō	tergum
Ēpīrus	nōs	rēs pūblica	tū
Fabius	oppūgnātiō	Saguntum	vōs
fuga	poena	senātus	

371.   ADJECTIVES

dīgnus	iste	quārtus	sōlus
indīgnus	mī (voc.)	quīdam	tantus
invītus	nūllus	secundus	uter
ipse	quantus		

372.   VERBS [1]

adsum	cupiō	faciō	prīvō
audeō	dēdūcō	fugiō	soleō
capiō	dubitō		

---

[1] Besides those reviewed in Lesson L.

380. Among the constructions thus far learned the perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive are used as follows : [1]

1. The perfect subjunctive is sometimes used in clauses of result after a past verb.[2] There is then the same difference of meaning between it and the imperfect, as there is in the indicative: **Ita territī sunt ut mē nōn vīderint,** *They were so frightened that they did not see me.*

2. The pluperfect subjunctive is used in wishes referring to the past, as the past perfect is used in English (optative subjunctive): **Utinam haec vīdisset,** *Would that he had seen this.*

(*a*) The pluperfect, like the imperfect, is in such cases introduced by **utinam.**

3. Both the perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive are used in clauses of characteristic: **Nēmō est quī haec vīderit,** *There is no one who has seen this;* **Nēmō erat quī haec vīdisset,** *There was no one who had seen this.*

381.　　　　　　　　VOCABULARY

accidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *to happen.*

Britannī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Britons.*

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (ex + faciō), *to accomplish, succeed in making, make.*

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus, *to rejoice.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus, *to speak.*

nōnne (nōn + ne), sign of a question expecting the answer *yes.*

pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, —, *to obey* (with dat.).

quondam, adv. *once, formerly.*

sapiēns, -entis, *wise.*

ūnus, -a, -um,[3] *one.*

uterque, utraque, utrumque,[3] *each of two, both.*

verbum, -ī, n. *word.*

---

[1] Other uses will be mentioned in later lessons.

[2] As a rule, however, the perfect subjunctive is used after the same tenses in the main clause as the present subjunctive, and the pluperfect after the same as the imperfect. Compare **326** *b.*

[3] Declined, **539.**

382. 1. Audīvistisne, puerī, fābulam dē quōdam rēge Britannōrum quī multō sapientior cēterīs erat? 2. Sī uterque vestrum hanc audīre cupiet, efficiam ut vehementer gaudeātis. 3. Quondam accidit ut ūnus ex amīcīs auctōritātem rēgis ita laudāvisset ut audācissimus hīc sit factus. 4. "Nōnne, rēx māgne, et mare et terra tibi pārēbunt, si eīs imperābis?" 5. Cui rēx dīxit: "Utinam tū verba meliōra dīxissēs, nam haec vix probō." 6. Posterō diē tamen postquam omnēs ad portum dēductī sunt, rēx ita loquitur: 7. "Ōceane māgne, nōnne tū meus servus es? Imperō tibi ut fugiās." 8. Sed mare nec fūgit nec verba quidem audīvit. Dēnique rēx: "Utinam haec numquam fēcissem." 9. Nam hōc sōlum effēcerat ut ipse minus sapiēns vīsus sit quod mare verbīs ēius nōn pāruerat. 10. Itaque verēbātur ne inimīcī gaudērent atque ita loquerentur: "Deō sōlī pārēre solet ōceanus."

383. 1. Did the king of the Britons make the sea obey him? 2. Was not that one wiser who did not order the ocean to flee? 3. Which of the two once urged the king to speak thus? 4. Both made him use his authority and speak boldly. 5. Would that it had not happened that one of[1] his friends desired to hinder him. 6. Would that this had so happened, that his enemies might not rejoice. 7. By this unworthy method he had made his power seem less. 8. Not even a king is one[2] whom the sea and the land obey.

---

[1] **382**, 3.   [2] Use is and compare **337**.

LESSON LIII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

384.   UNREAL CONDITIONS

1. **Sī adesset, bene esset.**   *If he were here, it would be well.*

2. **Sī adfuisset, bene fuisset.**   *If he had been here, it would have been well.*

(*a*) Notice that these conditional sentences imply that the supposition is not true, *i.e.* that he is not, or was not here. Such conditions are called *Unreal Conditions.*[1]

(*b*) Notice further that the imperfect subjunctive refers to present time, the pluperfect to past. Compare the use of these tenses in wishes (**321** and **380**, 2).

(*c*) Notice that in the condition (*if*-clause) the same tenses are used in English as in Latin.

385. RULE. — **In Unreal Conditions the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive are used in both Condition and Conclusion. The imperfect refers to present time, the pluperfect to past.**

(W. 557; B. 304; AG. 517; H. 579.)

386.   VOCABULARY

cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus, *to trust, be confident* (with dat. or abl.).[2]

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *to try, attempt.*

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *daily* (cotīdiē).

dēspērō, -āre (dē + spērō), *to despair.*

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (dē + sum), *to be lacking, fail* (with dat.).

duo, duae, duo,[3] *two.*

---

[1] Also called Conditions Contrary to Fact. The pupil will remember that conditional sentences in the indicative have been used since Lesson XXXI. Notice that the indicative, **Sī aderat, bene erat,** *If he was here, it was well*, does not imply that he was, or was not, here. Compare this with the condition in the subjunctive given above.

[2] Persons are in the dative, things in the ablative of cause.

[3] Declined, **540.**

frūstrā, adv. *in vain.*

moror, -ārī, -ātus, *to delay,*
   stop (mora).

nisi (ne + sī), *if not, unless.*

oblīvīscor, -ī, -lītus, *to forget*
   (with gen.).

paene, adv. *almost.*

pecūnia, -ae, f. *money.*

perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus
   (per + terreō), *to frighten*
   thoroughly, terrify.

quoque,[1] adv. *also.*

387. 1. Nōnne fābulam dē rēge Britannōrum memoriā tenuistis? 2. Sī ēius oblītī essētis, nūllam vōbīs fābulam umquam iterum narrārem. 3. Sī rēx suā auctōritāte ūtī nōn frūstrā cōnātus esset, multō sapientior vīsus esset. 4. Etiam sī imperiō tuō cōnfīderēs, dubitārēs marī imperāre ut morārētur. 5. Sī Hannibal Ītaliam ingentī multitūdine mīlitum complēvisset, numquam Fabius eum secūtus esset. 6. Sī accidet ut paene cotīdiānīs proeliīs invītus dīmicēs, nec tibi pārēbimus nec vincere cōnāberis. 7. Nōn dubitārēmus quīn dē oppūgnātiōne dēspērārent, sī portae mūrīque nostrī nōn essent ā dēfēnsōribus vacuī. 8. Numquam effēcistis ut perterrērentur, sī dux quīdam, cui nōmen est Marcus, aderat. 9. Sī pecūnia vōbīs deërit, pontem duōbus pedibus lātiōrem quam nostrum aedificāre nōn cōnābiminī. 10. Vōs quoque dīgnī essētis poenā gravissimā, sī portum nōn tenērētis.

388. 1. It would have been well if that king had not trusted in his own voice. 2. Even if one of[2] his friends were urging him, he would not be ordering the very sea to stop. 3. Even if it happens that money fails him, he never despairs of[3] victory. 4. Two great armies also would be following him if he desired to harm his enemies. 5. He never would have persuaded the senate to try everything,[4] if it had not been greatly terrified. 6. Unless you are in the habit of[5] forgetting your own words, I am not speaking in vain. 7. Do you fear that he obeys two masters?

---

[1] Always follows the word it emphasizes.   [2] See **382**, 3.

[3] dē.   [4] omnia.   [5] *be in the habit of,* soleō.

LESSON LIV

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Continued)

389.   IDEAL CONDITIONS

1. **Sī adsit, bene sit.** *If he should be here, it would be well.*

2. **Sī pecūnia dēfuerit, nōn bene sit.** *If money should fail (have failed), it would not be well.*

(*a*) Notice that these sentences state the condition as an idea or possibility. They are therefore called *Ideal Conditions*,[1] and in English always have *should* or *would* in both the condition and the conclusion.

390. RULE. — In Ideal Conditions the present subjunctive is used in both Condition and Conclusion.[2]

(W. 555; B. 303; AG. 516 *b*; H. 576.)

391.   VOCABULARY

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (ad + capiō), *to receive, accept.*
alius, -a, -ud,[3] *another.*
alter, -era, -erum,[3] *the other of two, second.*
aurum, -ī, n. *gold.*
beneficium, -ī, n. *kindness, favor.*
cibus, -ī, m. *food.*

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus (cum + agō), *to compel.*
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, *to become accustomed;* perf. *to be accustomed.*
dēfessus, -a, -um, *tired, weak.*
domus, -ūs,[4] f. *house, home.*
fortūna, -ae, f. *fortune.*
mūtō, -āre, *to change.*

---

[1] Also called Less Vivid Future Conditions.
[2] The perfect subjunctive is used in the condition, as in 2 above, when the condition is thought of as completed before the conclusion begins.
[3] Declined, **539.**   [4] Declined, **535.**

ō, -ere, -dī, -tus, *to show,*   quisquis, —, quidquid,[1] *who-*
icate.   *ever, whatever.*

ō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus   tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *to*
r + faciō), *to accomplish,*   *touch.*

⟩. 1. Nunc, puerī, sī bene audīre[2] cupiātis, alteram
am dē aliō rēge accipiātis. 2. Huic rēgī deus quīdam,
eum amābat, dōnum maximum dedit; nam hōc dīxit:
Nostrae amīcitiae causā beneficium quod maximē cupis,
⟩erficiam, sī id ā mē petēs." 4. Itaque rēx fortūnā
vehementer gaudēbat, nam multa saepe frūstrā cupere
.everat. 5. Sed sēcum ita loquitur: "Sī pecūniam
ım palam rogem, verear nē tantō dōnō indīgnus videar.
aque ab illō impetrābō ut omnia quae meō corpore
m in aurum mūtentur." 7. Ubi iam deus hōc dedit,
ıvidus aurī vēlōciter per domum suam contendit.
ıidquid manū tangēbat statim in aurum mūtātum est
⟩ō maximās grātiās ageret. 9. Sed paulō post ubi
⟩ dēfessus cibum poposcit, hīc quoque in aurum mūtā-
.t. 10. Dēnique rēx, quamquam pecūniās auxit, timōre
ıs est deum orāre ut sē dōnō līberāret.

⟩. 1. The king would be much wiser if he should not
t this kindness. 2. For he will be compelled against
ill[3] to ask to be freed. 3. If he had not rejoiced in[4]
y he would not have changed both house and food to
    4. If the gods should accomplish all that greedy
lemand, they would be weary with toil. 5. Whatever
ndhess the gods are accustomed to show to men, we
t eagerly. 6. Does that other king seem to you wiser
this one? Each deserved[5] severe punishment. 7. The
ıttempted to command the sea, the second was exceed-
eager to enjoy great fortune.

See **549** *a.*   [3] *against his will,* **invītus.**   [5] *was worthy of.*
listen.   [4] Compare **392, 4.**

LESSON LV

THE COMPOUNDS OF *sum*

394. The only compounds of **sum** which present any
peculiarities of conjugation are **possum**, *can, be able*,
and **prōsum**, *to be of advantage*. Learn the indicative,
subjunctive, and present infinitive of these verbs (562,
563).

(*a*) There are two forms of the prefix : **pot-** and **pos-** in the case
of **possum**, **prōd-** and **prō-** in the case of **prōsum**. The forms
ending in -t- and -d- are used before vowels, the others before
consonants.

(*b*) In **possum** the principal parts are slightly irregular also,
and the imperfect subjunctive, as usual, has the same peculiarities
as the present infinitive.

395.   DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

1. **Hostibus occurret.**   *He will meet the enemy.*
2. **Equitātuī praefuit.**   *He was in command of the cavalry.*
3. **Equitātuī praefectus est.**   *He has been put over the cavalry.*
4. **Haec tibi prōderunt.**   *These things will be of advantage to you.*

(*a*) Notice that the dative is used with these compound verbs,
while in English we have either a direct object or a prepositional
phrase.

(*b*) Of the verbs which have occurred so far, **adpropinquō**,
adsum, and **imperō** come under this head.

396. Rule. — The Dative is used with many verbs com-
pounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō,
sub, super*.

(W. 332; B. 187, III; AG. 370; H. 429.)

397.   VOCABULARY

aetās, -ātis, f. *age.*

anteā, adv. *before.*

antequam, conj. *before.*

cum, conj. *when.*

fortitūdō, -inis, f. *bravery* (**fortis**).

īdem, eadem, idem,[1] *the same.*

impōnō, -ere, posuī, -positus (**in + pōnō**), *to put upon, mount.*

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *to order.*

modus, -ī, m. *manner, way.*

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, *to go to meet, oppose.*

possum, posse, potuī, —, *can, be able.*

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (**prae + faciō**), *to put over, place in command of.*

praesum, -esse, -fuī (**prae + sum**), *to be over, in command of.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, — (**prō + sum**), *to be of use, of advantage.*

trēs, tria,[2] *three.*

398. 1. Antequam istud beneficium ā deō capere potuistī, fortitūdō tibi dēfuit. 2. Sī tanta pecūnia quantam petiimus nōbīs dētur, nōn prōsit nōbīs. 3. Nam numquam accidit ut tantō aurō nōs ita ūtī possīmus ut eō gaudeāmus. 4. Uter huic turrī ā vōbīs praeficiētur? Quis vestrum iubēbit[3] equitēs aciēī hostium occurrere? 5. In summō monte, quī ab hāc urbe nōn longē abest, sunt trēs legiōnēs quibus praeëst cōnsul. 6. Cum ipse ex tribus legiōnibus ūnam equīs impōnet, reliquae in campōs īnferiōrēs dēdūcentur. 7. Īdem, quī hōc modō equitātum parāre poterat, nōn dēterritus est quīn cotīdiē māgna itinera faceret. 8. Ob aetātem rēgis quī huic cīvitātī praeërat, verēbāmur nē cēterae gentēs ōrārent ut alius sibi praeficerētur. 9. Sī illīs eādem celeritāte anteā occurrissēmus, levī proeliō eōs superāvissēmus atque oppidō essēmus potītī. 10. Quid illī prōdesset sī

---

[1] Declined, **546.**

[2] An adjective of the third declension.

[3] **Iubeō** has the accusative and infinitive, while **imperō** has the dative and a clause with **ut.**

10

marī imperāre potuisset, aut huic[1] sī omnia in aurum mūtāvisset?

399. 1. Formerly when a shout was heard on the walls, courage failed our men. 2. But before the enemy's line will be seen, he will order the tribune to mount the foot-soldiers on horses. 3. In this way he went to meet the enemy, so that they fled almost into the river. 4. It will be of less advantage to himself than to you, if he shall be put in command of the fleet. 5. When this same man was over three towns, the latter enjoyed neither peace nor rest. 6. On account of your age you will be able to persuade the citizens not to trust young men.

LESSON LVI

USES OF THE INFINITIVE

400. Review the present active infinitive, and learn the present passive infinitive and the perfect and future infinitives, active and passive (**550–563**).

(*a*) The future active infinitive is made up of the future active participle and **esse**; the perfect passive, of the perfect passive participle and **esse**. These participles are declined like **bonus**.

SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVES

401. The infinitive is used as a subject, or to complete the meaning of another verb. As in English, the present infinitives are most frequently used in this way.

1. **Beneficia dare est grātum.**　*To grant favors is pleasant.*
2. **Arcem obtinēre cōnātur.**　*He is trying to hold the citadel.*
3. **Arcem obtinērī cupit.**　*He wishes the citadel to be held.*
4. **Arx māgna esse dīcitur.**　*The citadel is said to be large.*

---

[1] Supply **quid prōdesset** from the first part of the sentence.

(*a*) Notice that all these constructions are common in English :
In sentence 1 the infinitive is the subject of **est grātum**; in 2–4
it completes the meaning of the main verb and is therefore called
the *Complementary Infinitive.*

(*b*) Notice that in 4 **arx** is the subject of the expression **esse
dīcitur** and that the predicate adjective **māgna** is in the nomina-
tive, like the subject **arx**.   In 3, however, **arcem** is the subject
only of the infinitive **obtinērī**, and is in the accusative.

402.   RULE. — **The Subject of an Infinitive is in the accu-
sative.**

(W. 322 ; B. 184 ; AG. 397 *e* ; H. 415.)

403.   INDIRECT DISCOURSE

When a statement is quoted in a subordinate clause
after a verb of saying, thinking, or perceiving,[1] it is
said to be in *Indirect Discourse.*   In English such an
indirect statement is introduced by "that," expressed
or understood: *He says that you are here;* in Latin the
subject of this subordinate clause is in the accusative,
and the verb in the infinitive: **Dīcit tē adesse.**

404.   The present infinitive always refers to the *same
time* as the verb of saying or thinking, the future to
some *time after* it, and the perfect to some *time before* it.
The following forms are thus possible :

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES. **Dīxit tē urbem dēfendere.**	**Dīxit urbem dēfendī.**
He said that you were defending the city.	*He said that the city was being defended.*

---

[1] The following verbs of this class have occurred : **narrō, coniūrō,
nūntiō, cōnfīrmō, videō, dīcō, scrībō, sentiō, audiō, repūntiō, per-
suādeō, gaudeō, cōnfīdō, oblīvīscor, ostendō, iubeō, legō.**

ACTIVE	PASSIVE

FUT. **Dīxit tē urbem dēfēnsū-**   **Dīxit urbem dēfēnsum īrī.**
rum esse.

He said that you would   *He said that the city would be*
defend the city.   *defended.*

PERF. **Dīxit tē urbem dēfendisse.**   **Dīxit urbem dēfēnsam esse.**

He said that you had   *He said that the city had been*
defended the city.   *defended.*

405. RULE. — A Clause Subordinate to a verb of Saying, Thinking, or Perceiving has its subject in the accusative and its verb in the infinitive.

(W. 628; B. 314; AG. 580; H. 642.)

405 *a.* 1. Audīvī vōs fūgisse. 2. Cūr scrīpsit sē nōn ventūrum esse? 3. Nūntiās lēgātum oppidō praefectum esse. 4. Miserīs auxilium dare est optimum. 5. Tū mihī rēx esse nōn vidēris.

405 *b.* 1. He is said to be free. 2. Who says that we shall not see the king? 3. We heard that all were fighting. 4. It was easy to read this book. 5. I rejoice that you have been praised.

406.   VOCABULARY

animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *to notice.*

coepī, coepisse,[1] *began.*

cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *to recognize, learn;* perf. *to be acquainted with, know.*[2]

incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (in + capiō), *to begin.*

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *to understand.*

litterae, -ārum, f. plur. *a letter, an epistle.*

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *to overpower, surprise.*

polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus, *to promise.*

---

[1] Used only in the perfect system; the present system is supplied by **incipiō**.   [2] Especially, "to know" a person.

postrīdiē, adv. *on the following day.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *to ask,*[1] *seek.*

spērō, -āre, *to hope.*

studeō, -ēre, studuī, —, *to be eager, to be interested in.*[2]

ūllus, -a, -um,[3] *any.*

ūnā, adv. *together* (especially with **cum**).

407. 1. Iam litterās dē fortūnā rēgis tertiī ad tē scrībere incipiam. 2. Quī dīcitur quondam in antīquā silvā sine ūllō comite errāvisse. 3. Audīvī eum inter altās arborēs ā tribus pessimīs virīs oppressum esse. 4. Dīxērunt quoque hōs eum tam subitō oppressisse ut paene occīsus sit. 5. Sed adulēscēns quīdam, ubi hunc tantō in perīculō esse animadvertit, eīs occurrit. 6. Accidit ut in librō lēgerim hunc rēgī vulneribus dēfessō auxilium dedisse. 7. Postquam rēx intellēxit illum prō tantō beneficiō dōnīs nōn studēre, grātiās agere coepit. 8. Ac dīxit sē spērāre eum ūnā sēcum in urbem ventūrum esse. 9. Etiam pollicitus est sē rēgem eī ostentūrum esse. 10. Postrīdiē ad urbem profectus est adulēscēns, quī nōndum intellēxerat hunc ipsum esse rēgem. 11. Ubi eō pervēnit, domum rēgis statim quaesīvit; nam ille dīxerat sē apud rēgem habitāre.

408. 1. Did not the young man notice that this was the king himself? 2. The latter promised that he would give him many gifts. 3. But the young man did not desire to receive anything in return for[4] (his) kindness. 4. He said that he would start together with him on the next day. 5. After he understood that the king had been shown to him, he was delighted. 6. If you will begin to read this letter, you will not hope that he will arrive[5] here. 7. Afterwards he recognized that he was without any companion. 8. He is said to have asked no gift of the king.

---

[1] The person asked is in the ablative with **ā** or **ex**. Compare **petō, 283,** n. 2, and **rogō, 263,** n. 1.

[2] With dative or infinitive.   [3] Declined, **539.**   [4] **407,** 7.

[5] Remember that the Latin verb for "arrive" implies motion.

LESSON LVII

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

409. When a question is subordinate to an expression of asking, learning, knowing, or the like, its verb is in the subjunctive. All four tenses of the subjunctive are used, the present and the perfect when the verb of asking is present or future, the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive when the verb of asking is past.

PRES.	**Rogat quid faciant.**	*He asks what they are doing.*
	Rogat quid fēcerint.	*He asks what they have done.*
FUT.	**Rogābit quid faciant.**	*He will ask what they are doing.*
PAST	**Rogābat (rogāvit) quid facerent.**	*He was asking (asked) what they were doing.*
	Rogābat (rogāvit) quid fēcissent.	*He was asking (asked) what they had done.*

410. RULE. — An Indirect Question has its verb in the subjunctive.

(W. 599; B. 315; AG. 574; H. 642.)

411.   VOCABULARY

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, *to think, judge.*

māne, adv. *in the morning.*

opertus, -a, -um, *covered.*

patior, -ī, **passus**, *to allow, endure.*

praeter, prep. with acc. *except.*

prōgredior, -ī, -gressus, *to go on, advance.*

putō, -āre, *to suppose, think.*

quārē (quā + rē), adv. *wherefore, why.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque, *each, every one.*[1]

---

[1] Declined, **549** *a*. It means "each of any number," but **uterque** means "each of two."

modō (quō + modō), adv. *how.*   respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus
gnum, -ī, n. *kingdom, royal*   *to reply, answer.*
    power (rēx, regō).   sciō, -īre, scīvī, scītus, *to know.*[1]

412. 1. Posterō diē māne adulēscēns rogāre coepit ubi
rēx sē populō ostenderet. 2. Atque quaerēbat ab homine
quī aderat quōmodō eum cōgnōscere posset. 3. Acciderat
ut hīc esset rēx ipse, quamquam adulēscēns nōndum scīvit
quōcum loquerētur. 4. Ille respondit nēminem praeter
rēgem capite opertō manēre. 5. "Hōc modō intellegēs
quis ex omnibus sit ille." 6. Ubi in alteram partem aedi-
ficī prōgressī sunt, multōs aurō īnsīgnīs[2] adesse animad-
vertit adulēscēns. 7. Sed postquam diū frūstrā quaesīvit
quis rēx esset, comitem appellāvit. 8. Et dīxit sē arbitrārī
alterum[3] ex ipsīs rēgem esse, nam sōlōs sē capitibus opertīs
manēre. 9. Itaque ōrat ut ostendat uter rēx sit. 10. "Nam
sciō quemque putāre sē esse rēgem posse; sī ego rēx sum, tē
capite opertō esse nōn patiar." 11. Cui respondit rēx sē
nōn dubitāre quīn ille rēgnō dīgnus esset. 12. "Ego
tamen studeō scīre quārē tibi tam indīgnus videar."
13. Ad haec verba quid respondēre posset adulēscēns nōn
scīvit. 14. Dēnique profectus est et maximē gaudēbat
quod nunc intellēxit quōmodō rēgem cōgnōscere posset.

413. 1. He now knows how he can recognize his com-
panion. 2. He asked why they were going on into another
part of the building. 3. We alone understand who is
worthy of the kingdom. 4. Each one of you has forgotten
how great an honor this is for us all. 5. You will under-
stand why no one except the king remains with his head
covered. 6. You had supposed that you knew how to[4]
recognize us. 7. In the morning we shall bid him tell why
he allows this. 8. They had asked why he thought both
would go on out of the house.

---

[1] "To know" a fact.   Compare cōgnōscō.   [3] *one or the other.*
[2] *adorned, resplendent.*   [4] Compare **412,** 14.

LESSON LVIII

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued)

414. Dīxit hunc esse virum quem mīsisset.

He said that this was the man whom he had sent.

(*a*) Notice that the clause **quem mīsisset** is subordinate to the accusative and infinitive, and has its verb in the subjunctive. The same is true of clauses subordinate to indirect questions.

RULE. — **Subordinate clauses in Indirect Discourse have the subjunctive.**

(W. 605 ; B. 314 ; AG. 583 ; H. 643.)

415.   VOCABULARY

certus, -a, -um, *certain, fixed.*

certiōrem (certiōrēs) facere, *to inform.*

dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *to be under obligation, ought, must.*

dēmōnstrō, -āre, *to show.*

imperītus, -a, -um, *inexperienced, unskilled in.*[1]

iniūria, -ae, f. *wrong, injury.*

mīlitāris, -e, *military ;* rēs mīlitāris, *the science of war.*

perītus, -a, -um, *experienced, skilled in.*[1]

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *to place, put, pitch* (camp).

prīdiē, adv. *on the day before.*

quattuor, indeclin. *four.*

utrum . . . an, interrog. conj. *whether . . . or.*

416. 1. Prīdiē ēius diēī[2] māne pollicita erat rēgīna sē certō diē vōbīs nōcitūram esse.   2. Nōnne cōnfīsus es utrumque hōrum māiōrēs iniūriās passūrum esse quam ille passus esset.   3. Paulō ante lūcem quaerēbāmus utrum dē vītā dēspērārētis an prōgredī hinc studērētis.   4. Posteā cōnsul mē certiōrem fēcit tē iter quattuor diērum iam perfēcisse.   5. Dubitātisne rogāre sī hīc locus castrīs nātūrā magis

---

[1] With the objective genitive.
[2] Genitive depending on **prīdiē**.

idōneus sit quam ille? 6. Dēmōnstrābit nōbīs quōmodō quidquid tangāmus in aurum mūtāre possīmus. 7. Cum respondēre iussus est, dēmōnstrāvit ubi et quōmodō castra posuisset. 8. Utinam nē ob aetātem dēfessus esset, ut spērārēmus eum rēgnō potītūrum esse. 9. Agmen hostium perterrēre dēbēmus quō facilius renūntiāre possīmus cūr omnēs sē dēdiderint. 10. Postrīdiē audīvī ūnum ex hīs ducibus adesse quī reī mīlitāris imperītus esset. 11. Vehementer gaudeō quod cōgnōvistī nostrōs lēgātōs esse summā dīligentiā maximēque bellī perītōs.

417. 1. On account of his bravery we supposed that he would help us. 2. He will show why they tried to do another great injury without any cause. 3. On the day before this[1] we thought that either three or four ought to go forward who knew you. 4. Before you overtook us, they were eager to inform each man why you had delayed so long. 5. We have forgotten how we led our troops across the river. 6. Afterwards they began to ask what advantage it was to us if we got possession of the royal power. 7. After he noticed that you were skilful, he put you in command of the town.

REVIEW OF LESSONS LII–LVIII

418. NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

aetās	cibus	iniūria	quisque
aurum	domus	litterae	quisquis
beneficium	fortitūdō	modus	rēgnum
Britannī	fortūna	pecūnia	verbum

419. ADJECTIVES

alius	duo	opertus	trēs
alter	īdem	perītus	ūllus
certus	imperītus	quattuor	ūnus
cotīdiānus	mīlitāris	sapiēns	uterque
dēfessus			

---

[1] Compare **416**, 1.

420. VERBS

accidō	dēmōnstrō	oblīvīscor	praeficiō
accipiō	dēspērō	occurrō	praesum
animadvertō	dēsum	opprimō	prōgredior
arbitror	efficiō	ostendō	prōsum
certiōrem facere	gaudeō	pāreō	putō
coepī	impōnō	patior	quaerō
cōgnōscō	incipiō	perficiō	respondeō
cōgō	intellegō	perterreō	sciō
cōnfīdō	iubeō	polliceor	spērō
cōnor	loquor	pōnō	studeō
cōnsuēscō	moror	possum	tangō
dēbeō	mūtō		

421. ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

anteā	nisi	praeter	quondam
antequam	nōnne	prīdiē	quoque
cum	paene	quārē	ūnā
frūstrā	postrīdiē	quōmodō	utrum . . . an
māne			

422. INFLECTIONS

Perfect System of the Subjunctive.
Irregular Noun domus.
Irregular Adjectives ūnus, uterque, duo, alius, alter, īdem, ūllus.
Irregular Pronouns quisquis, quisque.
Irregular Verbs possum, prōsum.

423. CONSTRUCTIONS

With the Genitive : oblīvīscor, perītus, imperītus.
With the Dative : pāreō, cōnfīdō, dēsum, studeō.
With the Dative : Compound Verbs (impōnō, occurrō, prōsum, praesum, praeficiō, adsum, imperō, adpropinquō).
With the Ablative : cōnfīdō.
With the Ablative and ā or ex : quaerō.

Substantive Clauses of Result.

Perfect Subjunctive in Result Clauses after a Past Verb.

Pluperfect Subjunctive in Wishes.

Unreal and Ideal Conditions.

Uses of the Infinitive: Subject, Complementary, Indirect Discourse (Acc. and Inf.).

Complementary Infinitive with **cōnor, cōnsuēscō, coepī, incipiō, polliceor, studeō, dēbeō.**

Meanings of the Tenses of the Infinitive.

Indirect Questions.

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse.

424. IDIOMS AND PHRASES

certiōrem facere	ūnā cum
rēs mīlitāris	prīdiē ēius diēī
litterae	postrīdiē ēius diēī
castra pōnere	

LESSON LIX

Volō, Nōlō, Mālō

425. Learn the indicative, the subjunctive, and the infinitives of **volō**, *to wish*, **nōlō**, *to be unwilling*, and **mālō**, *to prefer* (564).

(*a*) **Nōlō** is compounded of the negative **ne** and **volō**; **mālō**, of the stem of **magis**, *more*, and **volō**.

(*b*) In the indicative the present tense is irregular. In the present subjunctive the sign is -ī-, as in **sim, sīs, sit**, etc. The imperfect subjunctive may be obtained, as usual, by adding the personal endings to the infinitives (**velle, nōlle, mālle**).

(*c*) Notice also that the stem of **volō** in the subjunctive and in the infinitive is **vel-**, while in the indicative it is **vol-**.

(*d*) These verbs are all followed by the complementary infinitive.

426. 1. Vīsne beneficia accipere? Sed iniūriīs dēsistere nōluistī. 2. Etiam sī vōbīs viam dēmōnstrābimus, nōlēmus

144   THE ELEMENTS OF LATIN

pecūniam accipere.   3. Utinam īdem litterās meās legere
quam¹ dē virtūte nostrā dēspērāre māluisset.   4. Ubi
cōpiās dēdūcere nōlēbātis, vōs cōgere volēbāmus.   5. Sī
istōs certiōrēs facere velim, mihi grātiās agere nōlītis.
6. Iam tē monueram nē māne pontem capere vellēs.
7. Neque illī sciunt cūr hīc cibum tangere nōluerit.   8. Sī
in interiōrēs partēs Galliae proficīscī māllent, istōs cum eīs
contendere vellem.   9. Meliōre fortūnā tē fruī mālēmus nē
ūllō impetū opprimāris.   10. Antequam fortitūdō et cibus
nostrīs dēfuērunt, aciēī occurrere voluērunt.

427. 1. Afterwards another wished to force us.   2. But
we also were unwilling to pitch camp on the same bank.
3. If each of the two should prefer to remain, I should be
unwilling to inform you.   4. If he had noticed before that
you were unwilling, he would have preferred to warn us.
5. After four days he will himself be unwilling to try to
help.   6. It happened that he wished to employ daily battles
which were to terrify the townsmen thoroughly.   7. Do you
not know why he is unwilling to kill the hostages?

428.   VOCABULARY

custōs, -ōdis, m. *guard.*
longinquus, -a, -um, *distant,*
    remote (longus).
male,² adv. *badly, without suc-*
    cess (malus).
mālō, mālle, māluī, *to prefer.*
mīlle, plur. mīlia, -ium,³*thousand.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *to be unwilling.*

passus, -ūs, m. *a pace* (about
    five feet); mīlle passūs *a*
    mile; plur. mīlia passuum,
    miles.
potestās, -ātis, f. *power.*
quīnque, indeclin. *five.*
reliquum est, erat, etc., *it re-*
    *mains, remained,*⁴ etc.

¹ **Mālō** itself contains a comparative, *rather,* so that **quam,** *than,* is
frequently used with it.   ² Compared, **255.**
³ **Mīlle** is an indeclinable adjective in the singular; the plural is a
neuter noun, belonging to the i- stems.
⁴ Followed by a substantive clause with **ut.**

revertor, -ī, -versus, *to return;*   **tandem,** adv. *at last.*
in the perf. system the active   **vīgintī,** indeclin. *twenty.*
revertī is used.   **volō, velle, voluī,** *to wish, want.*

429. 1. Henrīcus,[1] rēx Britannōrum, quondam cum pes-
simīs cīvibus bellum male gesserat.   2. Hī summam
potestātem occupāre volēbant quod rēx ipse reī mīlitāris
imperītus erat.   3. Is tamen rēgnum ita āmittere nōlēbat.
Quā dē causā fīlium, hārum rērum perītissimum, quīnque
mīlibus peditum praefēcerat.   4. Quī hostīs in longinqui-
ōrēs partēs plūs quam vīgintī mīlia[2] passuum iam secūtus
erat.   5. Quod eōrum castra nūllīs certīs ōrdinibus semper
expūgnāre volēbat, tandem ab hostibus captus est.   6. Hī
tamen eum nōn prohibēbant quīn cum custōdibus cotīdiē in
equō errāret.[3]   7. Quondam custōdēs inter sē experīrī volē-
bant quid equī cursū[4] possent.   8. Tandem postquam equī
cursū et labōre dēfessī erant, ille dīxit nunc sē omnibus
novum praemium dare velle.   9. Hīs verbīs suum equum
ita incitāvit ut illī eum capere nōn potuerint.   10. Reliquum
erat custōdibus ut invītī domum[5] reverterentur atque haec
ducī renūntiārent.

430. 1. We wish to point out that the king carries on
the war very badly.   2. Can you not tell me why the king
did not want to get possession of the throne[6]?   3. Those
who are experienced in war will be unwilling to fight.
4. Had you supposed that they would promise more than
five thousand horsemen?   5. May you prefer to advance a
mile rather than to return home.   6. It remains for you to
hurry across the bridge into more distant tribes with twenty
thousand foot.

---

[1] *Henry.*
[2] Extent of space, like extent of time, is expressed by the accusative.
[3] **in equō errāre,** *to take a ride.*   [4] *at running.*
[5] The accusative of **domus** is used without a preposition to express
the limit of motion.   Compare with **Rōmam,** 288, n. 1.   [6] **rēgnum.**

LESSON LX

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

431. Learn the imperatives of the model verbs[1] (550-561), and of nōlō (564).

432. To express commands, requests, or prohibitions in the first and third persons, the volitive subjunctive is used (315); but in the second person the present imperative is employed:[2]

COMMAND	PROHIBITION
SECOND PERSON { **Haec laudā (laudāte).** *Praise these things.*	**Nōlī (nōlīte) haec laudāre.** *Don't praise these things.*
FIRST PERSON. **Haec laudēmus.**	**Nē haec laudēmus.**
THIRD PERSON. **Haec laudent.**	**Nē haec laudent.**

433. RULE. — The imperative is used in commands or requests.

(W. 495; B. 281; AG. 448; H. 560.)

434. RULE. — Prohibitions are expressed by *nōlī, nōlīte*, with the infinitive.

(W. 496: 1-3; B. 276 c; AG. 450; H. 561.)

435.   VOCABULARY

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (ab + dō), *to hide, put away.*

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (ad + cēdō), *to approach, draw near.*

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (ad + dūcō), *to bring, induce.*

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (cum + faciō), *to finish, perform, wear out.*

excitō, -āre, *to arouse.*

facultās, -ātis, f. *opportunity.*

incertus, -a, -um, *uncertain* (certus).

---

[1] The present imperatives singular of dīcō, dūcō, and faciō, are dīc, dūc, and fac.

[2] The future imperative is rare, being used chiefly in laws.

mercātor, -ōris, m. *merchant,*   oportet, -ēre, oportuit,[1] *it is*
    trader.   *proper, ought.*
morior, morī, mortuus, *to die*   opus, operis, n. *work.*
    (mors).   voluntās, -ātis, f. *wish, will*
nihil, indeclin. n. *nothing.*   (volō).

436. 1. Da mihi facultātem; nōlī rem male frūstrāque
gerere. 2. Nōlīte tanta opera prō mercātōribus cōnficere
sed eōs cōgite ūnā nōbīscum revertī. 3. Sī eōs sīc ad virtū-
tem excitāre potueris, in propiōrēs montēs omnīs addūc.
4. Sī contrā ducis voluntātem nihil pollicērī dēbēs, nōlī
iuvenēs dē praedā certiōrēs facere. 5. Itineribus incertīs
nōs prōgredī nōn oportēbit; hortārī nōlīte ut illīc fortūnam
experiāmur. 6. Potestāte tuā palam ūtere sī istī iam
domum revertērunt. 7. Nōlīte vōs in interiōrēs partēs abdere
nē hōc modō coniugibus vestrīs līberīsque noceātis. 8. Dīc
mihi utrum ille prō patriā mortuus sit an tergum dederit.
9. Nōlīte ad illōs umquam accēdere nē iniūriīs opprimāminī.
10. Putāte quid prīdiē acciderit ac nōlīte spērāre vestrārum
iniūriārum nōs umquam oblītūrōs esse.

437. 1. Rouse yourselves to bravery; do not come near
our winter quarters before spring. 2. Say that they have
not finished their work and bring them home[2] along with
the rest of the merchants. 3. If you can accomplish noth-
ing contrary to our wish, do not attempt to hide your-
selves. 4. Do not say that you prefer to die rather than
inform the judge of your reputation. 5. Promise to bring
the supply of grain by uncertain roads. 6. Let them not
think that the victor's horsemen will crush you. 7. It will
be proper that[3] you ask how we have mounted so many on
horses.

---

[1] An impersonal verb, *i.e.* one which has a clause or a neuter pro-
noun for its subject. With oportet the clause is usually in the accusa-
tive and infinitive. Compare accidit (**381**), reliquum est (**428**).
[2] Compare **429**, 10.   [3] Compare **436**, 5.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

DĒ ATRŌCĪ MĀTRE

438. 1. Accēdite ad mē, puerī, ut fābulam dē lupīs accipiātis. 2. Quī, pessimī omnium animālium, saepe prae clae ita student ut etiam hominēs petant. 3. Erat quond am mulier quaedam quae sōla cum līberīs tribus per silvās ī ter faciēbat. 4. Ubi clāmōrem lupōrum subitō audit, inge nti timōre — nam sine ūllō comite erat — opprimitur. 5. Ac frūstrā equum vehementer incitat quod lupī eum facile cu su superant. 6. Misera illa quid facere oporteat ut anima lia morārētur, putāre nōn potuit. 7. Dēnique postquam equus us cursū tam dēfessus erat ut lupī paene mulierem tange re possent, hōc indīgnō cōnsiliō ūtēbātur illa. 8. Ūnum ex līberīs lupīs dedit quō dōnō[1] spērābat sē impetum eōru m pācāre posse. 9. Post breve tempus tamen māiōre clāmō re agmen[2] avidum sequī coepit ut māter dē salūte suā iteru m dēspērāret. 10. Itaque ut eōdem modō sē tuērētur, amō re līberōrum nōn est prohibita quīn ex reliquīs alterum lupīs dēderet.

LESSON LXI

THE VERBS eō AND fīō

(W. 228, 229; B. 131, 132; AG. 203, 204; H. 296, 297.)

439. Learn the indicative, the subjunctive, the imperative, and the infinitives of eō, *to go* (**565**).

(a) The stem is ī-; this appears as e- before vowels. The tense signs of the imperfect and the future indicative are those of the first conjugation.

---

[1] Ablative of means.   [2] Translate, *pack*.

440. Learn the indicative, the subjunctive, the imperative, and the infinitives of **fīō**, *to be made, become* (**566**).

(*a*) Notice that the i is long except in the form **fit** and when followed by -er-.

(*b*) **Fīō** is used as the passive of **faciō**; but compounds of **faciō** which, like **efficiō**, change the **a** to **i** have regular passives; *e.g.* **efficior, efficī, effectus.**

441.   VOCABULARY

abeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus (ab + eō), *to go off, go away.*

cārus, -a, -um, *dear.*

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *to withdraw, yield.*

deinde, adv. *then, secondly.*

ēius modī,[1] *of such a sort, such.*

eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūrus, *to go.*

fīō, fierī, factus, *to be made, become.*

frāter, -tris, m. *brother.*

ineō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus (in + eō), *to go into, enter, begin.*

neuter, -tra, -trum[2] (ne + uter), *neither.*

perīculōsus, -a, -um, *dangerous* (perīculum).

prīmum, adv. *first, for the first time* (prīmus).

prope, adv. *nearly*, and prep. with acc. *near.*

redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus (red + eō), *to return.*

trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus (trāns + eō), *to cross.*

tum, adv. *then.*

442. 1. Tum prīmum facultās istīs data est quī redīre iussī erant. 2. Ex duōbus rēgibus neuter custōdēs obsidum abīre patiēbātur. 3. Cūr erit nostrīs perīculōsum cum eīsdem mercātōribus pauca mīlia passuum īre? 4. Quōrum quisque dicitur cōnsilia initūrus[3] esse quibus nihil sine voluntāte vestrā fīat. 5. Litterae quās scrīpsistī ēius modī erant ut nēmō dubitāre posset quid fieret. 6. Quibus ex causīs certior fīēbās tribūnōs quoque quī reī mīlitāris

---

[1] The genitive of **is modus**, used as a genitive of quality.

[2] Declined, **539**.

[3] Agreeing with the subject, **quisque, 401** *b.*

11

perītissimī essent pontem trānsīsse.[1]   7. Sī frāter tuus,
mihi cārissimus, ōrdinēs cēdere iussisset, numquam eum
redīre passī essēmus. 8. Nōnne vōs scītis nēminem praeter
rēgem capite opertō manēre cōnsuēvisse? 9. Deinde nōlīte
ā nōbīs quaerere quō modō comitēs prope moenia addūcī
possint. 10. Utinam haec numquam facta essent! Malī-
mus morī quam timōre servitūdinis cōnsilia ēius modī
inīre.

443. 1. To go away from the walls was dangerous, but
neither of the two generals had returned. 2. Do not think
that we crossed the river from dislike[2] of you. 3. Then for
the first time I perceived that your brother had secretly been
made a hostage. 4. Even if this work which you have
now finished is dear to you, you ought to yield to me.
5. Secondly, ask him where he has hid the money, and
what advantage it is[3] to him. 6. From these causes it
resulted that we overtook you near the foot of the moun-
tain. 7. Will they not return unharmed at daybreak?

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

Dē atrōcī mātre (*concluded*)

444. 1. Dēnique antequam illa domum pervenīre potuit
tertius puer cibus animālium factus erat; sīc pessima māter
sē servāvit. 2. Paulō posteā cum equus dēfessus in ea loca
vēnit quae cōgnōvit, vēlōcius ad prīmam vīllam properāvit.
3. In librō antīquō lēgī eam amīcōs convocāvisse et perī-
culum suum et quid facere coācta esset, narrāvisse. 4. Tum
frāter, quī omnia audīverat, cum reliquīs perterrēbātur quod
haec tam atrōcia ausa erat. 5. Deinde eam dīcere iussit cūr
līberīs potius nocuisset quam ipsa morerētur. 6. Ubi ea

---

[1] Contracted form for **trānsiisse**.   [3] **prōsum**.
[2] **odium**.

nihil respondēre potuit, tum ille dīxit: "Nōnne haec indīgna est quae inter nōs diūtius maneat? 7. Utinam hanc numquam vīdissēmus; ipsa nunc vītā prīvētur cadatque cum līberīs." 8. Haec ubi dīxit, suō gladiō eam dīgnā morte occīdit atque omnēs hanc rem probāvērunt.

LESSON LXII

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

445. Temporal clauses are such as fix the time of an action or state, and are introduced in Latin by the following words:

> cum, ubi, *when.*
> cum (ubi) prīmum, *(when first) as soon as.*
> simul atque (ac), *(at the same time as) as soon as.*
> postquam, *after.*
> antequam, priusquam, *before.*
> dum, *while, so long as, until.*

Cum will be treated more fully later. Of the rest, only **antequam**, **priusquam**, and **dum** present peculiarities.

446. If the action or event introduced by **antequam, priusquam,** or **dum,** *until,* is anticipated or looked forward to, the subjunctive is used: **Castra mūnīre oportet priusquam hostēs veniant,** *It is necessary to fortify the camp before the enemy come;* otherwise the indicative is used: **Antequam castra mūnīta erant, hostēs vēnērunt,** *Before the camp was fortified, the enemy came.*

RULE. — *Antequam* and *priusquam, before,* and *dum, until,* have the subjunctive when the action is anticipated.

(W. 533, 534; B. 292, 293 III 2; AG. 551 *b*, 553; H. 603 II 2, 605.)

447. When **dum** means *while*, it has the present in
dicative; when it means *so long as*, it may have an
tense of the indicative: **Dum haec geruntur, abiban**
While this was being done they went away.

RULE. — *Dum, while,* is used with the present indicative.

(W. 533; B. 293 I; AG. 556; H. 604: 1.)

448.   VOCABULARY

adorior, -īrī, -ortus, *to attack,*
   assault.
commūnis, -e, *common.*
cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -sultus, with
   dat. *to have thought for one's*
   interests; with acc. *to consult.*
dolor, -ōris, m. *grief, pain.*
dum, conj. *while, as long as,*
   until.
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, *to go out,*
   disembark.
integer, -gra, -grum, *fresh, un-*
   impaired.
item, adv. *likewise.*
latus, -eris, n. *side, flank.*

medius, -a, -um, *middle; med*
   urbs, *the middle of t*
   city.
nancīscor, -ī, nactus, *to find, o*
   tain.
prīmō, adv. *at first.*
priusquam, conj. *before.*
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūr
   (prō + cēdō), *to advance.*
profectiō, -ōnis, f. *departu*
   (proficīscor).
simul atque (ac), *as soon as.*
sub, prep. with abl. and ac
   under, below.
tōtus, -a -um,[1] *whole, entire.*

449. 1. Ubi prīmum ē nāvibus ēgressī sunt, profectī
eōrum fugae similis erat. 2. Dum in itinere nostrōs adorī
solēbant, cotīdiānōs eōrum impetūs sustinēre poterāmu
3. Sed priusquam dolōre frātrum cārissimōrum tam veh
menter movērentur, tōtī cīvitātī consulere dēbuistī
4. Prīmō erant quī cōnsilia optima inīrent; deinde nē rē
necessāriae quidem cōnfectae sunt. 5. Antequam impetu
ab utrōque latere factus est, integrī dēfessīs auxilium ded
rant. 6. Dux imperātōrem prius cōnsulere volēbat quam

---

[1] Declined, **539**.   [2] **Priusquam** is frequently written thus as two words

nostrī profectiōnem animadverterent. 7. Simul atque idōneum locum in mediō colle[1] nancīscēmur, item castra pōnāmus. 8. Prōcēdāmus in prīmam aciem quō facilius prohibeāmus hostīs propius accēdere. 9. Cum prīmum animadvertit impetum ab utrōque latere fierī, portās claudī iussit. 10. Dum mercātōrēs per mediam urbem prōcēdunt, subitō Gallī eōs adortī sunt. 11. Quārē accidit ut sub monte relictī sint omnēs quī discessum impedīrent. 12. Non intellegō quā dē causā ille exspectāverit dum equitēs latus adorīrentur.

450. 1. As soon as he took thought for (our) common safety, we were eager for departure. 2. Therefore let us not wait until he gives the signal, but begin to go out of the camp at once. 3. Before you led the whole army through the middle of the province, you ought to have been moved[2] by the sorrow of the inhabitants. 4. While we were finding a suitable place, fresh guards approached from there. 5. At first he did not doubt that whatever he touched he could likewise change to gold. 6. So long as he was eager for money, he hardly had a thought for the commonwealth.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

DĒ BELLĪS PERSICĪS

451. 1. Simul ac rēx Persārum[3] lēgātōs in Graeciam mīsit quī illīs imperārent ut omnēs ipsī sōlī pārērent, multae cīvitātēs dōna parābant. 2. Sed Athēniēnsēs,[4] custōdēs illī tōtīus Graeciae, hōc nūntiō ita sunt excitātī ut nāvīs longās aedificāre coeperint. Quārē fīēbat ut magis etiam

---

[1] *halfway up the hill.* Compare the use of **summus** and **īnfimus**.
[2] Notice that the perfect infinitive is required in English because the word "ought" has no perfect tense. In Latin the present infinitive is always used, while the auxiliary shows the tense. See **449**, 3.
[3] **Persa, -ae**, m. *a Persian.* [4] **Athēniēnsis, -is**, m. *an Athenian.*

rēx eōs superāre voluerit.   3. Nam quid prōderat eī tantum
imperium, sī haec parva cīvitās contrā eum sē dēfendere
audēbat?   4. Arbitrābātur auctōritātem suam sē numquam
auctūrum esse, sī illōs sē dēdere nōn cōgeret.   5. Postquam
plūrimās nāvīs mīlitibus complēvit, imperātōrēs iussit duās
urbēs, Eretriam[1] atque Athēnās,[2] expūgnāre incolāsque in
servitūte tenēre.   6. Nec longō tempore posteā Eretriam op-
pūgnābant.   7. Quamquam ducēs Persārum cōnfīdēbant sē
istam urbem facile expūgnāre posse, frūstrā eam per diēs
septem adoriēbantur.   8. Dum tandem Persae incertī sunt
utrum sub nocte[3] abeant an opera cōnficere iterum cōnentur,
ā duōbus cīvibus urbs dēdita est.

LESSON LXIII

THE VERB *ferō·*

(W. 225; B. 129; AG. 200; H. 294.)

452. Learn the entire conjugation of **ferō**, *to bear,
bring*, with the exception of the gerund, the gerundive,
and the supine (**567**).

(*a*) Notice that the stem vowel disappears not only before other
vowels, as in the regular verbs of the third conjugation, but also
before r, s, and t.   The imperative singular is **fer**; the present
passive infinitive is **ferrī**.

453.   VOCABULARY

adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātus   cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. *custom*
  (ad + ferō), *to bring (to one)*,   (cōnsuēscō).
  bring up.   dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (dē +
circum, prep. with acc. *around*.   ferō), *to report, confer upon.*
cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus   enim, conj. *for.*[4]
  (cum + ferō), *to bring to-*   expedītus, -a, -um, *unencum-*
  gether.   *bered*.

---

[1] **Eretria**, -ae, f. *Eretria* (a city in Euboea).
[2] **Athēnae**, -ārum, f. plur. *Athens*.   [3] *at nightfall.*
[4] Never first in the sentence.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bear, bring.*

īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (in + ferō), *to bring upon* (with dat.).

noctū, adv. *by night.*

opīniō, -ōnis, f. *belief, expectation.*

paulātim, adv. *gradually.*

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque, *many, the majority.*

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque,[1] *whoever, whatever.*

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (re+ferō), *to carry back, report.*

rūrsus, adv. *again, once more.*

sententia, -ae, f. *view, opinion.*

454. 1. Cum prīmum plērōrumque sententiās cōgnōvistis, tum rem ad nostrōs rūrsus dētulistis. 2. Quīcumque ā frātre meō litterās feret, mihi cārissimus habēbitur.[2] 3. Nūllae causae adferuntur cūr impedīmenta eō cōnferrī nōn oporteat. 4. Contrā opīniōnem aliōrum quīnque legiōnēs expedītae prius[3] rediērunt quam illī nōbīs iniūriam īnferrent. 5. Utinam cōnsilia sua occultāvisset dum cōpiam armōrum contulisset. 6. Hōc sōlum illīs reliquum erat ut ex[4] cōnsuētūdine suā noctū domum redīrent. 7. Spērāverant enim sē frūmentum nancīscī posse priusquam nōs proficīscerēmur. 8. Cum rēx comitēs circum sē convocābat, potestātem suam ostendere volēbat. 9. Deinde eōs iussit exspectāre dum ōceanus prope accēderet, ut eum abīre cōgeret. 10. Postquam mare paulātim prope accessit, eī frūstrā imperāvit ut sibi cēderet. 11. Postrīdiē comitēs hanc rem ad aliōs referēbant, ut tandem hominēs quoque plērīque illī pārēre nōllent.

455. 1. As long as your troops were fresh and unincumbered, you brought war on your brother. 2. In accordance with[5] my custom I carried this by night to your son before

---

[1] Declined, **549** *a.*
[2] *consider.*
[3] Compare **449**, n. 2.

[4] *in accordance with.*
[5] Compare **454**, 6.

you should finish your work.   3. They informed me that
you would gradually collect arms in the winter, that you
might again seize the throne.   4. For a client was brought
up at dawn to say[1] that all the inhabitants felt grateful to
you.   5. Contrary to your expectation, whoever arrives[2]
from distant parts will report the same view.   6. Do not
consult him, but in the morning begin to advance gradually
through the middle of the town.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

DĒ BELLĪS PERSICĪS (*continued*)

456. 1. Ubi prīmum Eretriā potītī sunt atque omnia
vāstāvērunt, Athēnās prōcessērunt ut poenās[3] ab hāc urbe
quoque peterent.   2. Sed antequam urbem ipsam adortī
sunt, in campum quendam prope mare cōpiae ex nāvibus
sunt ēgressae.   3. Simul atque haec rēs ad Athēniēnsīs dē-
lāta est, nūntium vēlōcem ad Lacedaemoniōs[4] mīsērunt quī
rogāret ut sibi auxilium darent.   4. Hī tamen, quamquam
eōs adiuvāre volēbant, cōpiās nōn statim addūxērunt ut illī
sōlī sē dēfendere coāctī sint.   5. Nūlla enim cīvitās praeter
ūnam parvam auxilium eīs dedit; haec mīlle peditēs mīsit,
quōrum adventū decem mīlia complēta sunt.   6. Huic exer-
cituī praeerant ducēs decem inter quōs prīnceps erat vir reī
mīlitāris perītissimus, cui nōmen erat Miltiadēs.[5]   7. Hīc
cēterīs persuāsit ut cōpiās ex urbe in campum illum dēdū-
cerent locōque idōneō castra pōnerent.

---

[1] See **336**.   [2] I.e., *shall arrive*.   [3] *satisfaction*.
[4] **Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum**, m. *the Spartans*.
[5] **Miltiadēs, -is**, m. *Miltiades*, leader of the Greeks at Marathon.

LESSON LXIV

PRESENT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES

457. Learn the present active and the perfect passive participles of the model verbs (**550–567**).

Participles are adjectives in form and agree with nouns; for the declension of the present active, see **538** (**amāns**); the perfect passive is declined like **bonus** (**537**). They are modified by other words in the same way as the verbs from which they are formed.

1. **Haec portāns ēgrediēbā-tur.**	*He was coming out carrying these things.*
2. **Gallia est omnis dīvīsa.**	*Gaul as a whole is divided.*
3. **Frātrem vulnerātum ser-vābat.**	*He saved his wounded brother.*
4. **Timōre perterritus sē abdidit.**	*Terrified by fear he hid himself.*
5. **Cīvitās ob haec incitāta ē fīnibus exiit.**	*Aroused over these things, the state left its territory.*

(*a*) Notice that in 1 the present participle represents the action as going on at the time indicated by the main verb.

(*b*) The perfect participle may be used with **sum** as a predicate adjective, as in 2; yet its most common use is to represent an action as finished before the time of the main verb, as in 3–5.

(*c*) Notice further, that in such sentences as 4 and 5 the perfect participle may express time, cause, concession, etc., as the general meaning of the sentence requires. We may, therefore, translate it by a clause with *when, because, although*, etc., or by a clause coördinate with the main clause; *e.g.*, (sentence 4) *He was terrified by fear and hid himself.*

(*d*) As participles are not always used alike in Latin and in English, care must be taken in translating them.

458.   ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. **Caesare duce Galliam pācāvērunt.**
   They subdued Gaul under the leadership of Caesar (Caesar being leader).

2. **Hīs cōnsulibus illī Rhēnum trānsiērunt.**
   They crossed the Rhine in the consulship of these men (these men being consuls).

3. **Fīliā iuvante opus celeriter perfēcit.**
   With the help of her daughter she quickly finished the work (her daughter helping).

4. **Illī clāmōre audītō fūgērunt.**
   They fled on hearing the shout (the shout having been heard).

(*a*) Notice that in these sentences two nouns, a noun and an adjective, or a noun and a participle, are used in the ablative to express some circumstance attendant on the action of the main verb; this ablative may also express the time, as it clearly does in 2, or the cause, as in 4. These same ideas might all be expressed by clauses with **ubi**, **cum**, or **quod**.

(*b*) The ablative has very much the same meanings as it has elsewhere, but since it is here somewhat less closely connected with the rest of the sentence, it is called the *Ablative Absolute*.[1]

459. RULE. — **A noun or a pronoun, together with another noun, an adjective, or a participle, may be used in the ablative to express the circumstances, time, or cause of an action.**

(W. 397–399; B. 227; AG. 419; H. 489.)

460.   VOCABULARY

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *to join together, unite.*

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *to divide, separate.*

---

[1] While in English we sometimes employ the nominative absolute in such phrases as "Caesar being leader," "the shout having been heard," these expressions are often awkward, and those used in the translations above given are generally to be preferred. It should be remembered that the English has a perfect active participle, "having made," etc., but that the Latin has none, save in deponent verbs.

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (ē + dūcō), *to lead forth, lead out.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. *sally.*

expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus (ex + pellō), *to drive out, expel.*

ferē, adv. *almost,*[1] *about.*

inīquus, -a, -um, *unequal, unfavorable.*

īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *to arrange, draw up.*

lībertās, -ātis, f. *liberty* (līber).

praetereā, adv. *besides, moreover* (praeter).

procul, adv. *far, far off.*

propter, prep. with acc. *on account of.*

satis, adv. *enough, quite.*

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *to raise, take away, destroy.*

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (trāns + dō), *to hand over, surrender.*

vel (vel . . . vel), conj. *or (either . . . or).*[2]

461. 1. Prīmō oppūgnātiōnem sustinentēs bene sē dēfendēbant. 2. Deinde ēruptiōne factā sē cum cēterīs coniūnxērunt. 3. Quisquis mē cōnsulere vult, nūllō timōre impedītus Rōmam contendat. 4. Quisque armīs trāditīs lībertātem suam sublātam esse arbitrātur. 5. Saepe enim accidit ut multī dē commūnī lībertāte dēspērantēs sē trādiderint. 6. Procul ā domō propter aetātem relictus satis tūtus[3] esse nōn poteram. 7. Rēbus inīquīs ferē omnēs dēspērāre cōnsuēvērunt, sed fortūnā adiuvante gaudēmus. 8. Dum argentum in partēs trēs dīvidit, subitō clāmōre excitātus duās partēs āmīsit. 9. Simul atque aciem īnstrūxistī, sīgnō datō plūrēs expedītōs ēdūximus quō celerius istōs expellerēmus. 10. Vel sociōs tuōs statim ēdūc vel nōlī spērāre tē umquam domum revertī posse. 11. Quīcumque contrā voluntātem nostram noctū īre cōnābitur, nē custōdēs adoriātur quōs vidēbit. 12. Aliīs causīs adlātīs

---

[1] Ferē is used with adjectives and adverbs, while paene is used with verbs as well.

[2] Vel gives a choice: vel hīc vel ille, *either this man or that* (as you please); but aut is exclusive: aut Caesar aut nūllus, *either Caesar or nobody.* [3] For the case, see **401** *b.*

plērīque putābant sē aut nihil praetereā perficere aut sen-
tentiīs illōrum cēdere oportēre.

462. 1. The trader being their guide,[1] they will go out
from the citadel to-day. 2. After the sally was made they
easily drew up their battle line, even in an unfavorable
place. 3. Though all are suffering the greatest grief, the
messenger will begin to speak. 4. After they had com-
pleted the bridge they drove almost all the neighbors from
their fields. 5. As the chiefs were handing over the city,
no one dared to go far away. 6. Moved by hatred, you
wish no man except yourself to enjoy liberty and employ
power.[2] 7. Either do not divide your forces or join your-
selves with us, that we may more successfully make a sally.
8. Besides, having obtained liberty, you do not fear that
their coming will be dangerous to you.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

DĒ BELLĪS PERSICĪS (*continued*)

463. 1. Ubi tandem diēs aderat quō Miltiadēs summum
imperium ipse habēbat, aciem ita īnstrūxit ut tam longa
quam hostium fieret, sed in mediā aciē ōrdinēs minus validī
essent. 2. Quamquam Athēniēnsēs numerō[3] īnferiōrēs erant,
nēmō dubitābat quīn Persās fugāre et vincere possent. Signō
datō enim summā virtūte semper dīmicābant. 3. Tanta in
eō proeliō multitūdō tēlōrum fuisse dīcitur quae missa sunt
ab hostibus, ut Graecī[4] in umbrā[5] pūgnārent. 4. Itaque
prīmō illī in mediā aciē superiōrēs erant. Sed Athēniēnsēs
quī vīcērunt in utrōque cornū, tam subitō ā duōbus lateribus
in eōs impetum fēcērunt ut fugerent. 5. Maxima pars Per-
sārum occīsa est; reliquī nāvēs petiērunt quārum septem

---

[1] dux.   [2] imperium.   [3] numerō, abl., *in number*.
[4] Graecī, -ōrum, m. *the Greeks*.   [5] umbra, f. *shade*.

aptae sunt. Maximus erat frūctus hūius victōriae, cūius
aude Athēniēnsēs diū fruēbantur.   6. Nam et lībertātem
ōtīus Graeciae cōnfīrmāverant et audāciā virtūteque suā
ffēcerant ut illīc ipsī essent maximā auctōritāte atque inter
liās nātiōnēs potestāte non parvā sint potītī.

LESSON LXV

Cum TEMPORAL AND CIRCUMSTANTIAL

464. Since Lesson LV **cum** has been used, like **ubi**,
with the indicative, to define or fix the time at which
the action of the main clause occurs; for example:

1. **Cum in Galliam vēnit,**   *When he came into Gaul,*
   hī erant ducēs.   *these were the leaders.*
2. **Tum erās cōnsul cum**   *You were consul at the time*
   meam domum incendē-   *they set my house on fire.*
   runt.

465. Very often, however, when speaking of past
events, we merely wish to express the circumstances
under which they took place and not to fix the exact
time of their occurrence. We then employ **cum** with
the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive:

1. **Cum morārī nōn possent,**   *Being unable to (when they*
   longius prōcessērunt.   *could not) delay, they ad-*
                                  vanced farther.
2. **Cum rem ad eum rettulis-**   *When they had reported the*
   sent, aciem īnstrūxit.   *matter to him, he drew up*
                                  his line.

(*a*) In translating such clauses we often use the conjunctions
when or *as*, or a participle. It is important to notice that in an
English clause introduced by "when" no distinction is made
between the time of an action and the circumstances of an action,
the same form being used for both. In Latin the mood clearly
shows which kind of statement is being made.

466. RULE. — *Cum* is used with the indicative to define the time at which the action of the main verb takes place ; with the imperfect or the pluperfect subjunctive, to describe the circumstances under which a past event occurred.

(W. 535, 536 ; B. 288, 289 ; AG. 545, 546 ; H. 600 I, II.)

467.   VOCABULARY

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus (cum + cēdō), *to yield, grant, allow* (with dat.).

cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *to determine, station.*

etsī, conj. *even if, although.*

excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (ex + cēdō), *to go out.*

fossa, -ae, f. *ditch ;* fossam dūcere, *to dig a ditch.*

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *to set on fire, burn.*

iūs, iūris, n. *right, law.*

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f. *fortification* (mūniō).

nōn modo . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.*

novem, indeclin. *nine.*

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus (ob + ferō), *to offer, present.*

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (re + capiō), *to receive, take back ;* sē recipere, *to retreat.*

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus, *to find out, learn.*

sex, indeclin. *six.*

undique, adv. *from all sides* (unde).

468. 1. Cum Caesar procul esset, hae nātiōnēs ē fīnibus excēdere et nōbīs bellum īnferre cōnstituērunt. 2. Itaque rēbus ferē omnibus incēnsīs nē in itinere impedīrentur, diem profectiōnis cōnstituerant. 3. Sed priusquam excēdere inciperent, aliīs mūnītiōnibus perfectīs eōs prohibuit. 4. Cum cōgnōscet fossam in altitūdinem novem pedum dūcī, spem victōriae sublātam esse putābit. 5. Cum satis repperisset istōs sē recipere, eīs concessit, fīnitimīs petentibus, ut sine ūllā caede abīrent. 6. Ibi condiciō iūris est ēius modī ut nūllus alterī iniūriam īnferre audeat. 7. Nūllā spē oblātā plēraeque mulierēs nōn modo timidae erant sed morī etiam cupiēbant. 8. Etsī māne ab utrōque latere equitēs excitābuntur, nōn dubitābimus quīn novā ratiōne pūgnae ūtī pos-

sīmus. 9. Cum prīdiē pontem sex pedibus lātiōrem quam
alterum aedificāvissent, tē petente abīre cōnstituērunt.
10. Cum frūmentum undique cōnferrent, contrā opīniōnem
omnium nūntiātum est mūnītiōnēs nōndum perfectās esse.
11. Nisi postrīdiē sē in arcem recēpissent, numquam rep-
perissēmus quō modō eam capere possēmus.

469. 1. When they were daily bringing gifts from all
sides, he suddenly decided to seize the throne. 2. When
they had likewise advanced six miles, they found out that
their allies had yielded to a very small band. 3. Since
they had managed the matter badly,[1] they offered the chief
power to a man who was more skilled in war. 4. While
we were waiting until we might engage in battle, they dug
a ditch nine feet deep. 5. In our state there was such a
view concerning right that no man dared bring injury on
another. 6. Liberty being granted us, we shall not only
rejoice but also give thanks to our king. 7. After the
hope of victory had been taken away, they suddenly made
a sally from all the gates.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

DĒ BELLĪS PERSICĪS (*continued*)

470. 1. Cum rēx dē hāc pūgnā certior factus esset, Grae-
ciam vincere multō magis cupiēbat et māiōrem etiam classem
comparāre studēbat. 2. Lēgātōs per urbēs suās praemittere
cōnstituit quī incolīs nāvīs et cōpiās imperārent. Dum
tamen haec consilia init, subitō moritur. 3. Quamquam
fīlius ēius bellum Graeciae īnferre nōlēbat, imperātor tamen,
cūius auctōritās apud eum maxima erat, eī persuāsit ut opera
patris suī cōnficeret. 4. Postquam per quattuor annōs

---

[1] Abl. absolute.

omnīs rēs exercituī necessāriās contulērunt, quīntō[1] an̄
ingentīs cōpiās classīsque ēdūxērunt imperātōrēs.   5. D̄
nique Persae, paene nūllō eīs occurrente, ad Thermopylārum
angustiās[3] pervēnērunt ubi invītī castra pōnere coācti sun̄
6. In angustiīs enim īnstrūctī erant virī summae virtūti
quī parātī erant prohibēre illōs prope domōs suās venīre.

LESSON LXVI

CAUSE AND CONCESSION

471.   CAUSE

One of the most common ways of expressing caus̄
is by **quod** with the indicative, which has already beē
used in the exercises; the ablative absolute also mā
frequently be employed for this purpose, especiall̄y
when the expression is brief.   Another common way *is*
by **cum** with the subjunctive:

1. **Cum rem male gerat,**   *Since he manages the matter*
   expellitur.   *badly, he is being driven out.*
2. **Cum spēs salūtis tollerē-**   *Since hope of safety was being*
   tur, sē trādidit.   *taken away, he gave himself*
                                                       up.
3. **Cum facultās eī oblāta**   *Since the opportunity had been*
   esset, concessit.   *offered him, he withdrew.*

472.   CONCESSION

Concession has thus far been expressed by **quam-
quam** with the indicative, or by **etsī**, which, like **sī**,
has either the indicative or the subjunctive; concession
may further be expressed by **cum** and the subjunctive:

---

[1] **quīntus, -a, -um,** *fifth.*
[2] **Thermopylae, -ārum,** f. plur. *Thermopylae*, a pass from Thessaly
to southern Greece.   [3] **angustiae, -ārum,** f. plur. *pass.*

1. **Cum** vōcēs audiantur, nēmō vidētur.
    Although voices are heard, no one is seen.

2. **Cum** hīc imperītus esset, imperiō studēbat.
    Although this man was inexperienced, he was eager for command.

3. Cum prīmī ōrdinēs concessissent, nōs tamen prōcēdēbāmus.
    Although the first ranks had given way, still we were advancing.

473. RULE. — *Cum* Causal or Concessive is used with the Subjunctive.[1]

(W. 542, 571; B. 286 : 2 and 309 : 3; AG. 549; H. 598.)

474.   VOCABULARY

centuriō, -ōnis, m. *centurion.*

cōgitō, -āre, *to think* (about a thing), *consider.*

cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *to take a position, stop, halt.*

crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent.*

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (dis + cēdō), *to depart.*

extrā, adv. and prep. with acc. *outside of, beyond.*

incolō, -ere, -coluī, —, *to live in, dwell* (incola).

īnfrā, adv. and prep. with acc. *below.*

iūdicō, -āre, *to judge* (iūdex).

licet, -ēre, licuit, impers. verb,[2] *it is permitted, may.*

mōs, mōris, m. *habit, custom.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, *by night, at night* (noctū).

paulum, adv. *a little.*

praestō, -āre, -stitī, —, *to excel* (with dat.).

propinquus, -a, -um, *near, neighboring* (prope).

quoniam (cum + iam), *inasmuch as, because.*

---

[1] Causal and concessive clauses expressed by cum with the subjunctive are closely related to circumstantial cum clauses (**465**). So in English the participial phrase in "Being in town, I saw him," may express simply circumstance, or cause, or even concession.

[2] That is, the subject is usually a neuter pronoun, or an infinitive phrase or clause. Compare **435**, n. 1.

475. 1. Cum omnēs sē in silvīs abdidissent, centurio putābat nūllum haec loca incolere. 2. Nisi cibus incolīs iam deesset, nēmō cuperet nocturnā ēruptiōne discēdere. 3. Nūllī licuit noctū extrā moenia īre, quoniam hīc iūdicābat quantō cum perīculō concilium convocātum esset. 4. Etsī tandem mē certiōrem fēcissēs quid cōgitārēs, sub monte cōnsistere nōluissem. 5. Cum iam iūdicāre possem illōs propinquīs audāciā[1] praestāre, oblītus eram hōs discēdere. 6. Cum hunc esse mōrem cōgnōverit, nōluit vidērī contrā voluntātem eōrum agere. 7. Quoniam centuriō prō commūnī salūte excēdere voluit, crēbrīs nūntiīs eōs hortābāmur ut manērent. 8. Eā cōnsuētūdine cōgnitā ferē omnēs timōre opprimēbantur nē nāvīs paulō īnfrā oppidum noctū incenderent. 9. Quamquam eīs expedītō agmine proficīscī licuit, paucī facultāte datā discēdere mālēbant. 10. Cum ad eum dēferrētur[2] vōs fossam dūcere coepisse, equitēs paulum ēdūxit ut ab opere dēterrērēminī; vōs tamen ad noctem labōrāvistis.

476. 1. Although part of the allies had taken their stand there, the rest were not led outside the fortifications. 2. Since I am allowed[3] to inform you what tribes inhabit these lands, I shall do this. 3. In accordance with[4] his habit and custom, when he hears the shouting[5] he daily leads his forces out a little way. 4. Although I have decided to retreat, you will still find out how much[6] we excel your men. 5. When this (news) was brought back to him, as the opportunity was now given,[5] he prepared to

---

[1] The ablative without a preposition is often used to express in what particular a statement is true. This ablative is called the *Ablative of Specification*. Compare **numerō** (**463**, 2).

[2] Notice that the subject is the accusative and infinitive **vōs . . . coepisse**.

[3] Use **licet** and compare **475**, 9.

[4] Compare **454**, n. 4.

[5] Use an abl. abs.

[6] **quantum**.

advance by night. 6. Inasmuch as you have collected your baggage a little below the hill, we will cross the bridge.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

DĒ BELLĪS PERSĪCĪS (*continued*)

477. 1. Sed cum cēterī Graecī, maximō numerō Persārum perterritī, ex augustiīs fugere et Isthmum [1] mūnīre cuperent, Leōnidās,[2] hāc sententiā nōn probātā, cum suīs illīc manēre māluit. 2. Ubi paucōs diēs rēx morātus est, suōs mīlitēs proelium committere iussit; quī, cum sīgnō datō summā audāciā dīmicāvissent, viam per mediōs Lacedaemoniōs reperīre nōn potuērunt. 3. Dēnique tanta erat caedēs eōrum ut proeliō dēsistere invītī ac sē in castra recipere coāctī sint. 4. Quis tandem [3] putāre potuit paucōs Graecōs nōn modo impetum tantī exercitūs sustinēre sed illōs etiam vincere posse? 5. Cum iam spem victōriae rēx paene amīsisset, subitō quīdam eī iter per montēs ostendit quō ille cohortēs suās praemīsit quae Graecōs ā tergō [4] adorīrentur. 6. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs, Leōnidās omnēs domum mīsit praeter suōs. Quōs prīmā lūce adortī [5] Persae facile superāvērunt. Cum. enim parva manus fortissimē pūgnāvisset, omnēs occīsī sunt. 7. Sed quamquam mortuī sunt, etiam hodiē maximā fāmā fruuntur. Nam quidquid bonum vir fortis fēcit, semper memoriā hominum tenētur.

---

[1] **Isthmus, -ī,** m. the Isthmus of Corinth.

[2] **Leōnidās, -ae,** m. *Leonidas*, leader of the Spartans (declined as a noun of the first declension).

[3] **tandem,** *pray!*

[4] **ā tergō,** *from behind, in the rear.*

[5] Since **adorior** is a deponent verb, the perf. partic. is active in meaning.

LESSON LXVII

REVIEW OF PRONOUNS AND IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

478. Review the declension of the following pronouns and pronominal adjectives: ego, tū, nōs, vōs, suī, hīc, ille, iste, is, īdem, ipse, quī, quis, quīcumque, quīdam, quisque, quisquis (545–549).

479. Review the declension of the following ten irregular adjectives (539):

ūnus	ūna	ūnum	*one, single*
sōlus	sōla	sōlum	*alone*
tōtus	tōta	tōtum	*whole*
ūllus	ūlla	ūllum	*any*
nūllus	nūlla	nūllum	*not any*
alius	alia	aliud	*another*
alter	altera	alterum	*the other* (of two)
uter	utra	utrum	*which* (of two)
neuter	neutra	neutrum	*neither*
uterque	utraque	utrumque	*each* (of two)

(*a*) Notice that with the exception of the personal and reflexive pronouns (ego, tū, nōs, vōs, suī) all these words have -īus in the genitive and -ī in the dative singular, and that a number of them have -d in the neuter singular instead of -m.

480. VOCABULARY

aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (-quod),[1] *some one, some, any.*

concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus (cum + currō), *to run together, rally.*

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (cum + veniō), *to come together, assemble.*

exīstimō, -āre, *to think, consider.*

intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (inter + mittō), *to interrupt, stop.*

maritimus, -a -um, *by the sea, maritime* (mare).

opera, -ae, f. *assistance, services;* operam dare, *to take pains.*

---

[1] After nē and sī (nisi) this word has a shorter form, quis, qua, quid (quod). See **549**.

pedester, -tris, -tre, *of infantry*
(pedes).

peditātus, -ūs, m. *infantry*.

prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus
(prō + dūcō), *to lead for-
ward*.

quisquam, quidquam, *any one,
anything* (in negative clauses).

redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus
(re + dūcō), *to lead back*.

silentium, -ī, n. *silence*.

succēdō, -ere, -cessī, - cessūrus
(sub + cēdō), *to take the
place of, relieve* (with
dat.).

suprā, adv. and prep. with acc.
above.

ultrā, adv. and prep. with acc.
beyond.

ut, conj. *as*.

481. 1. Operā hūius prīncipis ūtēmur ut nōs sine ūllā difficultāte ad loca maritima peditātum prōdūcāmus. 2. Nōn enim pūgnam ipse intermittet dum aliquis dōna ferat atque obsidēs plūrimōs polliceātur. 3. Neque ego exīstimābam quemquam silentiō ē mūnītiōnibus procul ēgressum sē vōbīs trāditūrum esse. 4. Quemcumque vidēbis in itinere, dīc nōs amīcīs successūrōs esse. 5. Nōs scīre oportuit uter ex hīs in locō inīquō pedestrīs cōpiās cōnstituisset. 6. Vōs tamen spērāvistis neutrum ab īnferiōribus collibus ultrā fossam suōs reductūrum esse. 7. Tum cum hostēs eī occurrērunt, contrā opīniōnem manuī dēfessae legiōnem integram successisse sēnsit. 8. Cum prīncipēs tōtīus Galliae undique hūc convēnissent, ille sōlus, ut suprā dīximus, āfuit. 9. Nē vōs quidem operam dabitis ut quae sit cōnsuētūdō istōrum aut quid velint cōgnōscātis. 10. Ille quaesīvit cūr tū nōn exīstimārēs quemquam alterī successūrum esse vel ad arma concursūrum.

482. 1. He will himself find out whether some part of the infantry is being led back. 2. Overtake that column in silence[1]; let not any one run to arms or flee. 3. Al-

---

[1] Compare **481**, 3.

though you did not doubt that we had interrupted our
march, you waited until both messengers returned. 4. If
any one is unwilling to take his stand on the walls, the
entire community[1] will hide itself.   5. When this was
reported to my brother, moved by grief, he asked who
had dared kill so dear a king. 6. Besides, there is a
plain above the bridge, by nature most suitable for a
camp, to which[2] some one will lead us all. 7. Who of all
that live in the states by the sea is so skilled that he can
guide[3] our fleet?

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

DĒ BELLĪS PERSICĪS (*concluded*)

483. 1. Paulō post, Thermopylīs expūgnātīs, cōpiās ad
urbem prōdūxit rēx cūius adventū ferē omnēs incolae per-
territī fūgērunt, ut nūllīs dēfendentibus eam facile incende-
rit.   2. Cum ex Graecīs plūrimī hortārentur ut quisque
domum discēderet, Themistoclēs,[4] Athēniēnsis ille, ostendit
sīc nūllum ā servitūte sē servātūrum esse. 3. Quod tamen
nōn multōs ad suam sententiam addūcēbat, paucīs hōrīs
ante lūcem ūnum dē[5] servīs ad rēgem mīsit quī rem dēferat
et dīcat: "Sī hodiē Graecīs bellum īnferēs, vix ūnus ex eīs
fugere poterit."   4. Quō nūntiō hīc gāvīsus est quod exīsti-
mābat sē sīc bellum satis facile cōnfectūrum imperiōque
tōtīus Graeciae potītūrum esse. 5. Sed cum hīs verbīs in-
citātus classem in locum inīquum — mare enim nōn erat
lātum — prōdūxisset, multitūdō nāvium eī tam paulum prō-
fuit ut dēnique et victus et fugātus ē proeliō excēdere coāc-
tus sit. 6. Itaque semper memoriā habēte magis cōnsiliīs
Themistoclis quam armīs Graeciae superātōs Persās ex Eu-
rōpā[6] expulsōs esse.   Quārē illī clārissimō ducī grātiam
habēre dēbēmus.

---

[1] cīvitās.   [2] quō.   [3] dūcō.
[4] **Themistoclēs, -is,** m. *Themistocles,* a famous Athenian general
and statesman.   [5] *of.*   [6] **Eurōpa, -ae,** f. *Europe.*

LESSON LXVIII

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

484. Learn the future active participle and the gerundive of all the paradigm verbs (**550–567**).

485. ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The future active participle with **sum** forms the active periphrastic conjugation: pres. indic. **amātūrus sum,** *I am about to love;* imperf. **amātūrus eram,** *I was about to love,* etc. For a complete synopsis see **551.**

This periphrastic conjugation may be used in any of the active constructions of the verb where the meaning permits.

486. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The gerundive with **sum** forms the passive periphrastic conjugation: pres. indic. **amandus est,** *he is to be* (i.e. *must be, ought to be*) *loved;* imperf. **amandus erat,** *he was to be* (*ought to have been*) *loved,* etc. For a complete synopsis see **551.**

487. DATIVE OF AGENT

1. **Mihi oppidum est expūgnandum.**   *The town is to be* (*must be*) *taken by me,* or *I must take the town.*

2. **Vōbīs prōvincia erat dēfendenda.**   *The province was to be* (*had to be*) *defended by you,* or *You had to defend the province.*

Notice that this passive periphrastic conjugation implies duty, necessity, or obligation. The person on whom the duty rests is expressed by the dative; as this person is virtually the agent, the dative is called the *Dative of Agent.*

488. RULE. — **The Dative of Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the duty rests.**

(W. 339; B. 189; AG. 374; H. 431.)

489.   VOCABULARY

interclūdō, -ere, -clūdī, -clūsus, to cut off.

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (inter + faciō), to kill.

magistrātus, -ūs, m. magistrate.

nōnnūllus, -a -um, some.[1]

perfacilis, -e, very easy (facilis).

plērumque, adv. generally (plērīque).

singulī, -ae, -a, one by one, singly.

subsidium, -ī, n. support, reēnforcement.

490. 1. Cōpiās pedestrīs equīs impositūrus erat quō celerius sē recipere possent. 2. Sī templum deī rūrsus aedificandum est, omnia nōbīs facienda sunt nē argentum dēsit. 3. Quamquam timidī nōn estis, nōlīte oblīvīscī vōbīs patriam esse defendendam. 4. Quoniam extrā moenia ēgressūrī erātis, nōn cōgitābātis quidquam vōbīs cōnficiendum esse. 5. Caesarī omnia plērumque ūnō tempore erant agenda: ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, aciēs īnstruenda, sīgnum dandum.[2] 6. Nisi nōbīs imperātūrus est ut singulī paulātim proficīscāmur, magistrātūs cōgnōscent quid cōnātūrī sīmus. 7. Praetereā peditēs in duās partēs tibi dīvidendī sunt, quibus in utrumque latus impetum factūrus es. 8. Cum bene iūdicāvisset nōnnūllōs hāc ratiōne ūsūrōs esse, profectiōnem futūram esse fugae similem exīstimābat. 9. Silentiō omnēs vōbīs redūcendī erant neque erat quisquam extrā urbem relinquendus. 10. Nisi subsidium missūrī fuissētis, vōs amīcōs numquam apellāvissēmus.

491. 1. We are not going to delay, lest we be cut off from the bridge and killed. 2. Since you were going to take away all fear of slavery, they obeyed you. 3. The terms of peace must be heard by all who have assembled from every side below the bridge. 4. Even if he were about to demand a thousand hostages, he would not deprive

---

[1] The plural only is common.

[2] Supply erant (erat) from the first part of the sentence.

them of their lands. 5. If neither is going to find a very
easy road, others more skilled must be sent by us. 6. The
grain must be carried by them to Caesar with great speed,
for he is not going to pitch camp. 7. As we have said
above, he understood that reënforcements must be sent by
him to the townsmen.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

DĒ ĪNSULĀ [1]

492. 1. Mercātor quīdam, cui nōmen erat Sinōn,[2] perī-
cula maris sibi experienda esse cōnstituit et, datā facultāte,
vēlōcī nāvī ad Indōs [3] profectus est.   2. Prīmō, quoniam
nāvigāre nōn cōnsuēverat, aegerrimus erat ut sē moritūrum
esse exīstimāret, sed post paucōs diēs marī iam tranquillō [4]
magnopere gaudēbat. 3. Septimō diē māne contrā opīniō-
nem omnium nautārum parva īnsula nigra in ōceanō vīsa
est; ibi omnēs ē nāvī ēgressī hūc illūc errābant. 4. Post-
quam diū ita tempus ēgērunt, fame [5] oppressī arbitrābantur
īgnem sibi esse incendendum ut cibum parārent. Quō factō,
dum omnia comparantur, subitō sub pedibus ingentī mōtū [6]
īnsula ēvānuit.[7] 5. Nūlla enim erat īnsula sed mōnstrum,[8]
quod nautīs vīsum erat ob māgnitūdinem īnsula esse. Īgnī
factō in tergō excitātum est statimque incolīs suīs sē līberā-
vit. 6. Omnēs praeter Sinōnem in ōceanō mortuī sunt,
sed ille quamquam verēbātur ut domum suam rūrsus
umquam vīsūrus esset, tamen secundō diē ad terram natāvit.[9]

---

[1] īnsula, -ae, f. *island.*
[2] Sinōn, -ōnis, m. *Sinon.*
[3] Indī, -ōrum, m. *the East Ind-*
ians.
[4] tranquillus, -a, -um, *quiet.*

[5] famēs, -is, f. *hunger.*
[6] mōtus, -ūs, m. *movement* (moveō).
[7] ēvānēscō, -ere, -vānui, *to vanish.*
[8] mōnstrum, -ī, m. *monster.*
[9] natō, -āre, *to swim.*

LESSON LXIX

GERUND AND SUPINE

Learn the gerunds and the supines of all the paradigm verbs (550–567).

493. THE GERUND

The gerund is a verbal noun of the second declension with active force. The nominative case is wanting, but its place is taken by the present infinitive.

1. **Loquendī fīnem fēcit.**   *He made an end of speaking.*
2. **Ad audiendum parātī sumus.**   *We are prepared to hear (for hearing).*
3. **Scrībendō clārus fīēbat.**   *By writing he was becoming famous.*

494. The gerund may have a direct object, *e.g.* iūs senātum vocandī, *the right of calling the senate;* but instead of expressions like this a gerundive construction is more frequently used:

1. **Cōnsilium urbis capiendae.**   *A plan for (of) taking the city.*
2. **Vēnērunt ad pācem petendam.**   *They came to ask for peace.*
3. **Brūtus in līberandā patriā est interfectus.**   *Brutus was killed in freeing his country.*

(*a*) Notice that in each example the gerundive is a verbal adjective agreeing with its noun, and that both are in the case required by the sentence.

(*b*) Notice that in the second example **ad pācem petendam** expresses purpose and is equivalent to **ut (quī) pācem peterent.** This is one of the common ways of expressing purpose.

(W. 637–640; B. 338, 339; AG. 501–507; H. 621–631.)

495.   THE SUPINE

The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension with active force. The accusative and the ablative require special mention.

1. Lēgātī vēnērunt rogātum   *Envoys came to ask for peace.*
   pācem.
2. Perfacile factū est haec   *To say this is very easy (to do).*
   dīcere.

(*a*) Notice that in the first example the supine **rogātum** is used with a verb of motion[1] to express purpose, being equivalent to **ut** (quī) rogārent or ad pācem rogandam.

(*b*) The Supine in -ū is rare, being used only in a few expressions similar to the one given.

496. RULE.—The Supine in -*um* expresses Purpose after verbs of motion.

(W. 654; B. 340: 1; AG. 509; H. 633.)

497.   VOCABULARY

circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus
   (circum + veniō), *to surround.*
differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus
   (dis + ferō), *to differ.*
īnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus,
   to undertake, establish, equip.
mīror, -ārī, -ātus, *to wonder.*
permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus[2]
   (per + mittō), *to yield, permit.*

pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, — (per +
   teneō), *to reach, concern* (with
   ad).
prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus
   (prō + pōnō), *to set forth,
   offer.*
ūsus, -ūs, m. *experience.*

498. 1. Postquam nōs ad urbem expūgnandam parātī fuimus, rēgīna imprōvīsō prōgrediendī fīnem fēcit. 2. Semper vōs reī pūblicae administrandae avidī fuistis quod ūsus

---

[1] It really expresses the limit of motion without a preposition. Compare **Rōmam, domum.**   [2] With the dative.

hārum rērum vōbīs māgnus est.   3. Vel ad haec facienda
venīte vel ultrā montēs ad loca maritima rūrsus proficīscī-
minī.   4. Operam dedī per tōtam vītam ut bonīs librīs
legendīs sapientior fīam.   5. Quoniam studiō pontis faci-
endī paulō longius excessērunt, ferē omnēs interfectī sunt.
6. Dum refertur eōs ab arce oppūgnandā dēstitisse, lēgātōs
mittere pācem palam ōrātum īnstituēbant.   7. Nōlīte
cōgitāre perfacile factū esse dēfessīs cohortibus integrās
succēdere atque tōtum eōrum agmen circumvenīre.   8. Quid
erat reliquum nisi ut ad eōrum iūra mōrēsque cōgnōscendōs
extrā citeriōrēs regiōnēs ēgrederēmur.   9. Prīnceps lēgātīs
clam permīsit ut pācem petītum ab illō exīrent. 10. Prae-
tereā rēgnum occupandī causā neuter alterī concēdere voluit.
Quā rē accidit ut hīc sōlus cōpiīs pedestribus ūterētur.

499. 1. Since these excelled their neighbors in nothing,[1]
to expel them was easy.[2]   2. For the sake of capturing the
hill, he will allow the left wing to be cut off.   3. By build-
ing the bridge which to-day extends from the town to the
other bank, he aided the inhabitants.   4. When he had
found three horsemen, he sent one to ask help from the
neighboring tribes.   5. Let us show by giving him thanks
that we are likewise willing to desist from waging war.
6. By setting forth these ancient customs you will deter
them from coming.   7. May you grant them liberty,
that in saving them you may be greatly praised by all
men.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

DĒ ĪNSULĀ (concluded)

500. 1. Postquam ex aliīs perīculīs plūrimīs sē servāvit
Sinōn, errābat quondam procul ab urbe, cum senem [1] in rīpā

---

[1] nūllā rē.   [2] Use a supine.

flūminis vīdit.   2. Quī Sinōnem sē trāns flūmen portāre
iussit et tandem, quamquam hīc invītus erat, multa dōna
pollicendō impetrāvit.   3. Itaque Sinōn cum eum ā terrā
facile sustulisset — gravis enim nōndum erat — trānsīre
coepit; sed simul atque ille in tergō Sinōnis satis bene sēdit,[2]
crūribus[3] eum ita amplexus est[4] ut nūllō modō se līberāre
posset.   4. Tum Sinōn invītus senem, quī paulātim gravior
fīēbat, ferre per tōtum diem coāctus est dum sub nocte
maximē dēfessus erat; nec nox fīnem labōrandī fēcit quod
senex etiam dormiēns[5] captīvum amplectēbātur. 5. Posterō
tamen diē, dum per silvās errant — quod dominus Sinōnem
ita iusserat — subitō hīc caput illīus tantō impetū arborī
admōvit[6] ut ille ictū[7] oppressus ad terram ceciderit et
mortuus sit.

[1] **senex, senis,** m. *old man.*
[2] **sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, —,** *to sit.*
[3] **crūs, -ūris,** n. *leg.*
[4] **amplector, -ī, amplexus,** *to em-brace, clasp.*
[5] **dormiō, -īre, -iī, dormītūrus,** *to sleep.*
[6] **admoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,** (ad + moveō), *to move to, bring against.*
[7] **ictus, -ūs,** m. *blow.*

REVIEW OF LESSONS LIX–LXIX[1]

501.   NOUNS

centuriō	iūs	mūnītiō	potestās
cōnsuētūdō	latus	nihil	profectiō
custōs	lībertās	opera	sententia
dolor	magistrātus	opīniō	silentium
ēruptiō	mercātor	opus	subsidium
facultās	mīlia	passus	ūsus
fossa	mōs	peditātus	voluntās
frāter			

---

[1] The new words occurring in the Supplementary Exercises are not
included in this list, but are all found in the general vocabulary at the
end of the book.

502. ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

aliquis	integer	novem	quīnque
cārus	longinquus	pedester	quis
commūnis	maritimus	perfacilis	quisquam
crēber	medius	perīculōsus	sex
ēius modī	mīlle	plērīque	singulī
expedītus	neuter	propinquus	tōtus
incertus	nocturnus	quīcumque	vīgintī
inīquus	nōnnūllus		

503. VERBS

abdō	conveniō	īnferō	praestō
abeō	dēferō	īnstituō	prōcēdō
accēdō	differō	īnstruō	prōdūcō
addūcō	discēdō	interclūdō	prōpōnō
adferō	dīvidō	interficiō	recipiō
adorior	ēdūcō	intermittō	redeō
cēdō	ēgredior	iūdicō	redūcō
circumveniō	eō	licet	referō
cōgitō	excēdō	mālō	reliquum est
concēdō	excitō	mīror	reperiō
concurrō	exīstimō	morior	revertor
cōnferō	expellō	nancīscor	sedeō
cōnficiō	ferō	nōlō	succēdō
coniungō	fīō	offerō	tollō
cōnsistō	incendō	oportet	trādō
cōnstituō	incolō	permittō	trānseō
cōnsulō	ineō	pertineō	volō

504. ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

circum	male	prīmum	simul atque
deinde	noctū	priusquam	sub
dum	nōn modo . . .	procul	suprā
enim	sed etiam	prope	tum
etsī	paulātim	propter	undique
extrā	paulum	quoniam	ultrā
ferē	plērumque	rūrsus	ut
īnfrā	praetereā	satis	vel (vel . . . v
item	prīmō		

505.   INFLECTIONS

olō, nōlō, mālō, eō, fīō, ferō.

euter, tōtus, nōnnūllus, aliquis (quis), quīcumque, quisquam.

mperatives (dīc, dūc, fac, fer).

'articiples, Gerundive.

eriphrastic Conjugations.

erund, Supine.

506.   CONSTRUCTIONS

ative of Agent with the Gerundive.

ative with Verbs (cōnsulō, praestō, īnferō, concēdō, succēdō, permittō).

ccusative of Limit of Motion (domum ; Supines).

ccusative of Extent of Space.

blative of Specification.

blative Absolute.

mpersonal Verbs (oportet, accidit, licet, reliquum est).

ommands and Prohibitions.

emporal Clauses (priusquam, antequam, dum, cum).

ircumstantial Clauses (cum).

ausal Clauses (quod, quoniam, cum).

oncessive Clauses (quamquam, etsī, cum).

507.   IDIOMS AND PHRASES

ilia passuum	sub nocte	ā tergō
ius modī	fossam dūcere	sē recipere
edia urbs	operam dare	pertinēre ad

LESSON LXX

REVIEW OF THE GENITIVE AND THE DATIVE

508. The genitive has been used to express the pos-
ssor, quality, the object of action or feeling expressed
y nouns and adjectives, the whole of which a part

is mentioned, with **similis** and **dissimilis**, **perītus** and **imperītus**, and as the object of **oblīvīscor**. Review the rules.

509. The dative has been used to express the indirect object, the possessor with **sum**, the agent with the gerundive, with compound verbs, with adjectives like **grātus**, **idōneus**, **cārus**, **proximus**, **similis**, **dissimilis**, with verbs like **persuādeō**, **pāreō**, **noceō**, **cēdō**, etc. Review the rules (**571**).

510. 1. Cum obsidēs hūius nātiōnis circumventī essent, timōre mortis mōtī fidem[1] nostram ōrābant. 2. Spē subsidī sublātā nōnnūllī sē vestrae amīcitiae permīsērunt, sed paucī noctū excessērunt. 3. Cum praemiōrum oblīvīscerēminī, ille magistrātus, cui erant hī agrī, vōs manēre iussit. 4. Ubi illīc cōnstitit mercātor, omnēs ab eō quaerere incipiēbant quō modō eae gentēs inter sē differrent. 5. Ille respondit hōs cēterōrum dissimillimōs esse cum nūllī permitterent ut virtūte sibi praestāret. 6. Nōn dēterritus est rēx quīn virum summae virtūtis interficeret, quamquam nōbīs fuit grātissimus. 7. Cum mīrārēmur quantum istī praestārēs, subitō impedīmentīs interclūsī sumus partemque frūmentī āmīsimus. 8. Ūsus reī mīlitāris tantus erat illīs ut etiam in loca longinquiora singulī proficīscī nōn dubitārent. 9. Deinde prōpōnam quam ob rem ōrdinēs singulōs plērumque īnstituāmus atque quō modō aliīs noceāmus.

511. 1. After the battle line had been drawn up, the magistrate had to give aid to the rest. 2. If your experience in these matters[2] were greater, you would not forget that these are unlike their neighbors. 3. Either obey him, or lead us on to a place which is by nature more suitable for a camp. 4. Even if we shall be surrounded,

[1] *protection.*   [2] Compare **510, 9.**

some will not be moved by fear of punishment. 5. Since your territory reaches from this river to the sea, the journey is not generally very easy for single men. 6. Why are not men of such great boldness roused by grief for their companions? 7. We cannot be prevented from making[1] a ditch, unless you persuade us to interrupt the work.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

DĒ MĪLITE QUĪ RĒGĪ NŌN PĀRĒBAT

512. 1. Dē multīs rēbus, puerī, iam lēgistis; nunc, nisi nōn vultis, audiētis dē atrōcī cōnsiliō cūiusdam rēgis Germānōrum cui erat nōmen Fredericus.[2] 2. Accidit enim quondam ut hīc ab hostibus graviter pressus, suīs imperāvisset nē quisquam īgnī in castrīs ūterētur. Itaque dum noctū sōlus errat, lūmine[3] vīsō maximē mōtus est. 3. Cum ad aedificium parvum silentiō accessisset, animadvertit mīlitem quī litterās ad uxōrem[4] scrībēbat, in quibus dūra bellī perīcula salūtemque suam narrābat. 4. Dēnique, rēge cōgnitō, timōre perterritus ōrābat ut sē poenā līberāret et epistulam ad fīnem addūcere paterētur. 5. "Maximē,"[5] respondit ille, "impetrābis quod vīs; iterum scrībe atque haec quoque tuae coniugī narrā: Cum imperātōrī male pāruerim, numquam mihi tē iterum vidēre licēbit; ante lūcem enim mortuus erō."

---

[1] dūcō.
[2] **Fredericus** -ī, m. *Frederick* (the Great).
[3] **lūmen** -inis, n. *light.*
[4] **uxor** -ōris, f. *wife.*
[5] **maximē,** *certainly.*

LESSON LXXI

REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABLATIVE

513. The accusative has been used to express the direct object, the subject of the infinitive, extent of time and space, limit of motion in the case of domus and the names of towns, and with many prepositions. Review the rules.

514. The ablative has been used in nearly all its important relations. If these various constructions be examined, it will be found that they fall into three classes corresponding to the English objective case with *from*, *with*, and *in*.

This is historically due to the fact that the Latin ablative represents three cases which have been blended into one — the ablative proper or *from*-case, the sociative or *with*-case, the locative or *in*-case.

The Ablative Proper includes the

   1. Ablative of Separation,
   2. Ablative of Agent,
   3. Ablative of Cause,
   4. Ablative of Comparison.

The Sociative Ablative includes the

   1. Ablative of Accompaniment,
   2. Ablative of Manner,
   3. Ablative of Means,
   4. Ablative with Deponents,
   5. Ablative of Degree of Difference,
   6. Ablative of Quality,
   7. Ablative Absolute.

The Locative Ablative includes the

      1. Ablative of Place,
      2. Ablative of Time.

The ablative of specification and the ablative with
gnus and indīgnus cannot well be classed under any
e of these three heads.   Review the rules.

515. 1. Prīmō ubi discessū eōrum iter intermissum est,
gistrātum illūc cum parte peditātūs sequī oportuit.
Posteā, priusquam cōgnōvit quō iuvenēs sē recēpissent,
nnūllīs permīsit ut praedae causā expedītōs prōdūcerent.
Postquam prīdiē, condiciōnibus pācis nūntiātīs, reī pūb-
ae cōnsuluit, prīmā lūce concilium convocāvit.   4. Licē-
tne nōbīs in aliquō collī ab itinere dēsistere, quō diūtius
iēte fruāmur?   5. Sī ante tertiam vigiliam veniet exer-
us quī sex cohortibus māior est nostrā manū, silentiō
cēdāmus.   6. Etsī arma maximā cūrā comparābantur,
n exīstimābam illōs tam brevī tempore nōs circumventūrōs
se.   7. Nōlīte rogāre quā dē causā hominēs tantā fortitū-
e tēlīs spoliāverīmus.   8. Quīcumque illōs et aquā frū-
ntōque interclūdere et nocturnō impetū circumvenīre
ēbit, rēgnō potiētur.   9. Tanta est hūius potestās ut
ō adiuvante ingentem multitūdinem armātōrum[1] com-
verit, quōrum subsidiō nōs vincet.

516. 1. Unless you offer us assistance, our young men
l one by one depart at dawn.   2. He promised that
en in an unfavorable place he would easily save them
m servitude.   3. In the winter before, some had built
bridge, which was much wider than that of yours.
I do not want any one[2] to live in that region, because

---

[1] The perf. pass. partic., being an adjective, is often used substan-
ely : armātī, *armed men.*
[2] quisquam.   Why not aliquis ?

the neighbors will use their services.   5. At first he under-
took to deprive them of their lands, then with his infantry
he cut them off from grain.   6. Since he halted far from
the mountain, he could not show how much his troops
surpassed the rest.   7. As soon as your father learned
why armed men were coming together, he offered no hope
of safety.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

DĒ FORTĪ CONIUGE

517. 1. Spartacus[1] quīdam, prīnceps gentium Germānā-
rum, turrim māgnam nōn procul ā Rhēnō sibi aedificāverat;
inde cum sociīs suīs multās iniūriās agricolīs propinquīs īn-
ferre solitus est.   2. Quam ob rem incolae hārum regiōnum
odiō maximō ēius tandem mōtī, omnēs in mūrōs impetum
facere cōnstituērunt; diū et ācriter pūgnātum est.[2] 3. Dēni-
que cum ille cōpiā cibī interclūsus esset, lēgātōs ad eōs dē
condiciōnibus pācis mīsit; quōs cīvēs redīre iussērunt, cum,
prīncipe nōn trāditō, omnīs interficere vellent.   4. Quod ubi
audīvit coniūnx Spartacī, mulier summae virtūtis, omnia ex-
perīrī cōnstituit priusquam prīncipem amicōsque suōs cārissi-
mōs tam indīgnā morte occīdī paterētur.   5. Itaque sine
ūllā morā in mūrō cōnstitit, ut hostibus novās condiciōnēs
prōpōneret atque ita dīxit: " Nōlīte, cīvēs, mulierem caedere
quae nihil tantā poenā dīgnum fēcit.   Mihi permittite ut
discēdam cum omnibus rēbus quās umerīs[3] meīs portāre
poterō."   6. Tum illī, quod ab eā beneficia saepe accēpe-
rant, id quod petiit concessērunt.   Brevī tempore ē portā

---

[1] **Spartacus, -ī,** m. *Spartacus,* a German chief.
[2] The passive of intransitive verbs is often used impersonally:
pūgnātur, *there is fighting.* We should generally translate by the
personal form, *they fought.*
[3] **umerus, -ī,** m. *shoulder.*

turris ēgressa est mulier virum suum in umerīs portāns;
cūius virtūtem omnēs ita mīrātī sunt ut neque ipsī nec
prīncipī nocuerint.

LESSON LXXII

REVIEW OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND THE INFINITIVE

518. Review the uses of the Subjunctive (**314 ff.**).

519. Review the uses of the Infinitive (**400–405**).

520. 1. Ūsus reī mīlitāris nōn erat tantus ut intellēxerit
quae esset causa profectiōnis. 2. Quibus ex rēbus fīēbat ut
nēmō reppererit cūr ad templum mulierēs concurrissent.
3. Nēmō aderat quī nōn dubitāret quīn magistrātus spem
subsidī et salūtis obtulisset. 4. Utinam integrī nōbīs suc-
cēderent quō tūtiōrēs in ulteriōrem Galliam pervenīrēmus.
5. Omnibus quī partēs maritimās incolunt lībertātem con-
cēdāmus et eōs hortēmur nē illīc adsint. 6. Cum eōs bellō
studēre animadvertisset, exspectābat dum cōpiae suae pedes-
trēs augērentur. 7. Nōn erat perfacile prius illūc con-
venīre quam ab imperātōre ēiusque peditātū impedīrēmur.
8. Utinam nē imperātor mīlitem interficī iussisset quī ad
coniugem cārissimam epistulam scrībēbat! 9. Cum equi-
tātum continēre frūstrā cōnātus esset, verēbātur nē eōrum
discessū nōnnūllī essent perterritī. 10. Sī propter hās
condiciōnēs pācis singulae gentēs obsidēs trādant, bellum
intermittātur dum iterum coniūrāre possint.

521. 1. Although all hope of aid had been taken away,
neither of the two leaders was willing to give himself up.
2. We were unwilling to be cut off from the river before we
found out[1] that we could use your services. 3. May you
increase your power in the districts near the sea that we

---

[1] Indicative or subjunctive ?

may sail into port with less fear.   4. If you had deter-
mined to surround the citadel with your foot forces, who
would have been able to hinder you?   5. Would that you
were not one[1] who preferred to yield to fortune rather than
try everything.   6. It happened that he had already sent a
band forward which was to give you relief.   7. He did not
wait until the majority should come together there,[2] but
unexpectedly gave the signal of departure.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE

DĒ POENĀ TRĪSTISSIMĀ

522. 1. Miserrima erat fortūna cūiusdam urbis pulcher-
rimae quam ingēns mūrium[1] multitūdō quondam vāstābat;
quī nōn sōlum omnem cōpiam frūmentī occupābant sed
līberōs quoque adoriēbantur.   2. Postquam incolae cīvitātī
omnibus modīs frūstrā cōnsuluērunt, maximum praemium eī
prōposuērunt quī urbem perīculō et morte līberāre posset.
3. Tum imprōvīsō vir pictā[2] veste[3] īnsīgnis sē ostendit
quem omnēs hortātī sunt ut eum labōrem acciperet.   Dēni-
que cum eī persuāsissent, māgnā fāmā multī adductī eum
per mediam urbem sequēbantur.   4. Subitō tībiā[4] parvā
carmen[5] incipit ille.   Quō audītō undique mūrēs ad eum
concurrunt.   Atque etiam audīvī prīmō eōs cōnstitisse,
deinde omnīs ad carmen tībiae saltāre[6] incēpisse, ut incolae
māgnopere mīrārentur.   5. Cum hōc agmen ad flūmen ad-
dūxisset, sīgnō datō, omnēs ūnō impetū in aquam dēsiliunt.[7]
Tum cīvēs, quī quid accidisset vix iūdicāre poterant, maximē
gaudēbant; cōnfīdēbant enim sē iam perīculō līberātōs esse.
6. Itaque, cum ille vir praemium postulāret, avidī pecūniae
id dare nōlēbant.   Tum ille, carmine multō grātiōre inceptō,
ex omnibus domibus puerōs ēdūxit, et eīs sequentibus ad

---

[1] is.   [2] *thither.*

montēs profectus est. 7. Cum miserī patrēs mātrēsque eōs revocāre frūstrā cōnārentur, omnēs cum illō ad locum altissimum properāvērunt, ubi ingēns hiātus [8] in latere montis eōs accēpit.

[1] **mūs, mūris**, m. *mouse.*
[2] **pictus, -a, -um**, *embroidered.*
[3] **vestis, -is**, f. *garment.*
[4] **tībia, -ae**, f. *pipe.*
[5] **carmen, -inis**, n. *tune.*
[6] **saltō, -āre**, *to dance.*
[7] **dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, -sultūrus,** *to jump down.*
[8] **hiātus, -ūs**, m. *opening.*

LESSON LXXIII

NUMERALS

523. Learn the cardinal numbers to one thousand and the ordinals through the twenty-first (**544**).

524. Review the declension of **ūnus** (**539**), **duo** (**540**), and **trēs**, and of **mīlle** (**mīlia**); the other cardinals, to **centum** inclusive, are not declined, except as they contain **ūnus, duo,** or **trēs**. The hundreds from **ducentī** to **nōngentī** and all ordinals are declined like the adjective **bonus**.

525. 1. Etsī discessū hostium Caesar equitātum in duās partēs dīvīsit, quattuor cohortēs mīlia passuum quīndecim prōdūcet. 2. Ducentī hominēs pūgnantēs in cornū sinistrō māne cecidērunt priusquam duae nautārum manūs pervēnērunt. 3. Tribus legiōnibus hūc convocātīs, pontem quīnque pedibus lātiōrem, quadrāgintā pedibus longiōrem aedificābit. 4. Quod illī nōn erant imperītī novae ratiōnis pūgnandī, diē octāvō ex hīs in proximōs fīnīs prōgressus est. 5. Spē rēgnandī [1] adductus novīs rēbus ita studēbās [2] ut illīc manēre quam exercituī decem legiōnum imperāre māllēs. 6. Sī ille

[1] **rēgnō, -āre,** *to reign.*
[2] **novīs rēbus studēre,** *to be eager for a revolution.*

mīlia passuum duodēvīgintī hostīs abesse non satis cert⸺or
factus esset, ibi nōn cōnstitisset.   7. Quoniam hīc t⸺m
īnsīgnis auctōritātis est, nōn dubitābō cum quīngentīs co⸺i-
tibus eō contendere.   8. Fidē sociōrum cōgnitā, ex utrōq⸺e
latere equitēs mīsit quī īnfrā pontem mīlibus passuu⸺m
tredecim flūmen trānsīrent.   9. Quōscumque amīcōs es⸺e
repperit, hīs persuādēre cōnābātur ut quīntō diē sē cu⸺m
vīgintī mīlibus Germānōrum coniungerent.   10. Prīm⸺ō
prōposuit quantō cum perīculō propter itinera incert⸺a
sescentī equitēs per silvās prōcessūrī essent.   11. Prō⸺ō-
vinciae dēfendendae causā quaeque cīvitās duo mīlia ped⸺i-
tum mīsit.

526. 1. He sent three cohorts to protect the baggage   ⸺;
four others he led on five miles.   2. On the fourth day i⸺n
the morning he drew up two legions in line; the rest he⸺e
kept about the town.   3. Which of the two has made a⸺ a
ten-foot ditch and a wall fourteen feet high?   4. When he⸺e
heard that you were twenty-five miles distant from the⸺e
town, he began to despair of safety.   5. On the day before⸺e
at dawn twenty-two thousand men had come to defend the⸺e
camp.   6. The spears of these people are two feet shorter⸺r
than those of the Gauls, but their swords are much longer⸺.

527.   **ANDROCLUS AND THE LION**

Imperātor[1] Rōmānus quondam in circō maximō[2] spectācu-
lum[3] parāvit quod hāc rē spērābat sē māiōre grātiā futūrum
esse apud populum. In ēius modī spectāculīs saepe hominēs
cum bestiīs[4] pūgnābant quae Rōmam missae erant ex Asiā[5]
aliīsque longinquīs regiōnibus. Inter hōs hominēs erant 5
multī servī quī, aut poenam veritī aut quod nātūrā erant
pessimī, ab dominīs suīs fūgerant. Quī captī plērumque
imperātōrī trādēbantur ut cum bestiīs dīmicāre cōgerentur.
Multōs per diēs antequam spectāculum darētur, leōnēs[6] sine
cibō in carceribus[7] suīs sub circō maximō continēbantur 10
quō fame[8] magis incitārentur ācriusque pūgnārent. Cum
hominēs damnātī[9] in circum adductī essent, contrā eōs
ēmittēbantur[10] bestiae, quae brevī tempore nōn modo hominēs
miserōs sed sē ipsae interficiēbant.

Hōc tempore, dē quō dīximus, erat quīdam inter hōs 15
servōs, nōmine Androclus,[11] cūius dominus paucīs annīs
anteā imperium in Āfricā obtinuerat eumque, cum ē prō-
vinciā rediisset propter iniūriam commissam imperātōrī
trādiderat ut bestiīs darētur. Quō modō accidit ut proximō
spectāculī diē huic pūgnandum esset cum leōnibus.   20

Diē cōnstitūtō[12] per multās hōrās multitūdō omnis gene-
ris[13] omnis aetātis in circum cōnfluēbat[14] ut ingēns illud
aedificium et īnfrā et suprā complētum sit hominibus.
Tandem sīgnō datō portae carcerum apertae[15] sunt et leōnēs
līberātī. Quōrum ūnus simul atque Androclum cōnspexit,[16] 25
ad eum accurrit[17] velut[18] impetum factūrus. Et sī impetum
fēcisset, nōn diū dubia fuisset pūgna. Multō māior enim et
validior erat omnibus aliīs leōnibus quī eō diē ēmissī sunt.

Māgnopere perterritus Androclus nec prōgredī nec sē re-

cipere potest. Omnis spēs āmissa vidētur, nec aliud quid-
quam exspectant eī quī haec vident quam certam mortem
miserī hominis. Iam bestia vix quīnque passūs abest ab
homine cum contrā omnium opīniōnem cōnsistit. Tum
5 subitō laetē[19] et caudam[20] movēns prōcessit sēque ad ēius
pedēs prōiēcit.[21]

Māior etiam fīēbat omnium admīrātiō[22] cum servus quo-
que omnī timōre līberātus ad leōnem accessit ēiusque caput
manibus tangēbat. Nēmō fuit in tantā multitūdine quī tam
10 mīrābilem[23] rem umquam vīdisset. Imperātor quī ipse aderat
hominem ad sē vocāvit et ab eō quaesīvit quid umquam
fēcisset quā rē bestia eī hōc īnsīgnī modō grātiās ageret.

Tum Androclus narrāvit sē ā dominō suō quondam fūgiss[e]
quod poenam gravissimam timēret. Secundō diē cum su[b]
15 nocte ad spēluncam[24] vēnisset in eam sē ingressum[25] ess[e]
ad dormiendum. Vix ingressum[25] maximō timōre sē captum
esse cum māgnum leōnem inīre vidēret. "Iam dē vītā dē-
spērābam. Nūllam enim ēgrediendī facultātem vidēbam.
Nihil erat, neque hasta neque gladius, quō pūgnāre possem.
20 Exspectābam dum leō mē adorīrētur, quod non fēcit tamen,
sed trīstī clāmōre dolōrēs māgnōs indicāvit.[26] Dēnique in
dextrō ēius pede spīnam[27] longam vidēbam quam extrāxī.[28]
Ex illō tempore leō grātus[29] mēcum mānsit. Habēbam eum
in locō amīcī et servī. Cotīdiē enim ex spēluncā ubi habitā-
25 bāmus profectus est ad cibum capiendum nec saepe sine
praedā rediit.

"Post breve tempus autem[30] priōrī vītae meae studēre
coepī et ex illīs locīs discēdere cōnstituī. Posterō diē cum
leō praedae petendae causā abesset, spēluncam relīquī. Nōn
30 ita multō post, dum in urbem quandam nocte clam ingredī
cōnor, ā mīlitibus quī ēius portae custōdēs erant captus sum.
Hī mē ad lēgātum addūxērunt ā quō remissus[31] sum dominō.
Quī bene cūrāvit, ut putābat, nē mortem iterum vītārem.[32]
Et nisi leō mē cōgnōvisset, hīc mē stāre[33] nōn vidērēs."

35 Imperātor hāc mīrābilī rē vehementer mōtus eā ipsā hōrā
Androclō et lībertātem et leōnem dōnō[34] dedit.

[1] **Imperātor,** *the emperor.*
[2] **circus maximus, -ī, m.** *the Circus Maximus.*
[3] **spectāculum, ī, n.** *show.*
[4] **bestia, -ae, f.** *wild beast.*
[5] **Asia, -ae, f.** *Asia.*
[6] **leō, -ōnis, m.** *lion.*
[7] **carcer, -eris, n.** *prison, cage.*
[8] **famēs, -is, f.** *hunger.*
damnātus, -a, -um, *condemned.*
ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *to let out.*
Androclus, -ī, m. *Androclus.*
cōnstitūtus, -a, -um, *appointed* (**cōnstituō**).
genus, -eris, n. *kind, class.*
cōnfluō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxūrus, *flow together, gather.*
aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, *to open.*
cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *to spy, catch sight of.*
accurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus, *run up.*

[18] **velut,** *as if.*
[19] **laetē, adv.** *with joy.*
[20] **cauda, -ae, f.** *tail.*
[21] **prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus,** *to throw.*
[22] **admīrātiō, -ōnis, f.** *surprise.*
[23] **mīrābilis, -e,** *wonderful, strange.*
[24] **spēlunca, -ae, f.** *cave.*
[25] **ingredior, -ī, -gressus,** *to enter ;* **ingressum,** participle agreeing with **sē.**
[26] **indicō, -āre,** *to show, express.*
[27] **spīna, -ae, f.** *thorn.*
[28] **extrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus,** *to draw out.*
[29] **grātus,** *grateful.*
[30] **autem,** *however.*
[31] **remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus,** *to send back.*
[32] **vītō, -āre,** *to avoid, escape.*
[33] **stō, -āre, stetī, stātūrus,** *to stand.*
[34] **dōnō,** dative.

THE GOLDEN FLEECE

528.   1. JASON'S UNCLE

Erant quondam in Thessaliā[1] duo frātrēs, quōrum alter[2] Aesōn,[3] alter Peliās appellātus est.   Hōrum prīmō Aesōn rēgnum obtinuerat, at[4] post paucōs annōs Peliās, rēgnī cupiditāte[5] adductus, nōn modo frātrem suum expulit, sed etiam in animō habēbat, Iāsonem,[6] Aesonis fīlium, interficere. 5 Quīdam tamen ex amīcīs Aesonis, ubi sententiam Peliae intellēxērunt, puerum ē tantō perīculō servāre cōnstituērunt. Noctū igitur[7] Iāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt[8] et cum posterō diē ad rēgem rediissent eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse.   Peliās, cum haec audīvisset, etsī rē vērā[9] māgnopere 10 gaudēbat, tamen velut[10] dolōre oppressus quae causa esset mortis quaesīvit.   Illī tamen, cum bene intellegerent dolōrem

ēius falsum[11] esse, nesciō[12] quam fābulam dē morte puerī narrāvērunt.

Post breve tempus Peliās, veritus nē rēgnum suum tantā vī[13] et iniūriā occupātum āmitteret, amīcum quendam
5 Delphōs[14] mīsit, quī ōrāculum[15] cōnsuleret. Ille igitur quam[16] celerrimē Delphōs contendit et quam ob causam vēnisset dēmōnstrāvit. Respondit ōrāculum hōc tempore nūllum esse perīculum ; monuit tamen Peliam ut, sī quīs venīret calceum[17] ūnum gerēns,[18] eum statim expelleret.
10 Post paucōs annōs accidit ut Peliās māgnum sacrificium[19] factūrus esset ; nūntiōs in omnīs partīs mīserat et certum diem conveniendī ēdīxerat.[20] Diē cōnstitūtō[21] māgnus numerus hominum undique ex agrīs convēnit ; inter aliōs autem[22] vēnit etiam Iāsōn, quī ā puerō[23] apud centau-
15 rum[24] quendam habitāverat. In itinere tamen, dum nesciō quod flūmen trānsit, calceum amīsit. Postquam duās hōrās frūstrā quaesīvit, sine calceō ad rēgis aedificium pervēnit.

Quem cum vīdisset Peliās, subitō perterritus est ; intel lēxit enim hunc esse hominem dē quō ōrāculum dīxisset.
20 Hōc igitur iniit cōnsilium. Rēx erat quīdam nōmine Aeētēs,[25] quī rēgnum Colchidis[26] illō tempore obtinēbat. Huic commissum[27] erat vellus[28] illud aureum[29] quod Phrīxus ibi multīs annīs anteā relīquerat. Cōnstituit igitur Peliās Iāsonī imperāre ut hōc vellere potīrētur ; cum enim rēs
25 esset māgnī perīculī, spērābat eum in itinere moritūrum esse. Quā rē Iāsonem ad sē vocāvit et quid fierī vellet ostendit. Iāsōn autem, etsī bene intellegēbat rem esse difficillimam, negōtium[30] laetē[31] suscēpit.[32]

NOTE. — New words are explained but once, when they first occur, and are not found in the General Vocabulary.

[1] **Thessalia, -ae,** f. *Thessaly*, a district in northeastern Greece.
[2] **alter . . . alter,** *the one . . . the other.*
[3] **Aesōn, -onis, Peliās, -ae,** m. *Aeson, Pelias.*
[4] **at,** conj. *but.*
[5] **cupiditās, -ātis,** f. *desire, ambition.*
[6] **Iāsōn, -onis,** m. *Jason,* leader of the Argonauts.
[7] **igitur,** *accordingly, therefore.*

8 aufĕrō, -rre, abstulī, ablātus, *to carry off.*
9 rē vērā, *in fact, really.*
10 velut, *as if.*
11 falsus, -a, -um, *false, pretended.*
12 nesciō, *I do not know;* nesciō quis, *some . . . or other.*
13 vīs, vīs, f. *force, violence;* plu. vīrēs, -ium, *strength.*
14 Delphī, -ōrum, m. plu. *Delphi,* seat of the famous oracle of Apollo. Compare **288,** n. 1.
15 ōrāculum, -ī, n. *the oracle.*
16 quam, with superl., *as . . . as possible.*
17 calceus, -ī, m. *shoe.*
18 gerō, *to wear.*
19 sacrificium, -ī, n. *sacrifice.*

20 ēdīcō (ē + dīcō), *to proclaim.*
21 cōnstitūtus, -a, -um, *appointed.*
22 autem, *however, now, but.*
23 ā puerō, *from boyhood.*
24 centaurus, -ī, m. *centaur,* a mythical creature, half horse and half man.
25 Aeētēs, -is, m. *Aeetes.*
26 Colchis, -idis, f. *Colchis,* a district east of the Black Sea.
27 committō, *to intrust.*
28 vellus, -eris, n. *fleece.*
29 aureus, -a, -um, *golden.*
30 negōtium, -ī, n. *task, undertaking.*
31 laetē, adv. *gladly, cheerfully.*
32 suscipiō (sub + capiō), *to undertake.*

2. PREPARING FOR THE JOURNEY

Cum Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Iāsōn sōlus proficīscī. Nūntiōs mīsit igitur in omnīs partīs, quī causam itineris docērent[1] et diem certum conveniendī ēdīcerent. Intereā, postquam omnia quae sunt necessāria ad armandās[2] nāvīs cōnferrī iussit, negōtium 5 dedit Argō[3] cuīdam, quī summam scientiam[4] rērum nauticārum[5] habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret. Hīc autem tantā dīligentiā operī sē dedit ut tōta nāvis decem diēbus perfecta sit. Dum enim in aedificandō occupātus erat, labor nec diē nec nocte intermittēbātur. Ad multitūdinem hominum 10 trānsportandam[6] nāvis paulō erat lātior quam eae quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus, et ad vim tempestātum[7] sustinendam validissima erat facta.

Intereā is diēs accēdēbat quem Iāsōn per nūntiōs ēdīxerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multī quōs aut nova rēs 15 aut spēs praedae movēbat, undique conveniēbant. Dīcitur autem in hōc numerō fuisse Herculēs, Orpheus, Thēseus, Castor multīque aliī, quōrum nōmina nōtissima[8] sunt. Ex hīs Iāsōn, quōs arbitrātus est ad omnia sustinenda perīcula

parātissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā[9] dēlēgit[10]
quī sociī suī essent. Tum paucōs diēs morātus, ut omnis
rēs necessāriās comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit[11] et tempestātem
ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus inter māgnōs clāmōrēs op-
5 pidānōrum omnium solvit.[12]

[1] doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, *to teach, explain.*
[2] armō, *to equip.*
[3] Argus, -ī, m. *Argus,* the builder of the ship Argo.
[4] scientia, -ae, f. *knowledge.*
[5] nauticus, -a, -um, *naval.*
[6] trānsportō (trāns + portō), *to carry over.*
[7] tempestās, -ātis, f. *storm, wind.*
[8] nōtus, -a, -um, *known.*
[9] quīnquāgintā, indeclin. *fifty.*
[10] dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus (dē + legō), *to pick out.*
[11] dēdūcō (dē + dūcō), *to bring down, launch.*
[12] solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *to cast loose, set sail.*

3. THE FIRST MISFORTUNES

Quīnque diēbus posteā Argonautae,[1] ita enim appellāt-
sunt quī in istā nāvī vehēbantur,[2] ad īnsulam quandam
pervēnērunt et ē nāvī ēgressī ā rēge illīus regiōnis laetē ex-
ceptī[3] sunt. Nōnnūllās hōrās ibi morātī sub nocte rūrsu-
10 solvērunt; at postquam pauca mīlia passuum prōgressī sunt
tanta tempestās subitō coörta[4] est ut cursum tenēre[5] nōn
possent et in eandem partem īnsulae unde profectī erant
māgnō cum perīculō redīre cōgerentur. Incolae autem, cum
nox esset obscūra,[6] Argonautās nōn cōgnōscēbant et nāvem
15 hostium vēnisse arbitrātī, vī et armīs[7] eōs ēgredī prohibē-
bant.[8] Ācriter in lītore[9] pūgnātum est[10] et rēx ipse, quī
incolās addūxerat, ab Argonautīs occīsus est. Prīmā lūce
tamen sēnsērunt incolae amīcōs esse quibuscum pūgnāvis-
sent, et Argonautae, ubi vīdērunt rēgem sē interfēcisse,
20 māgnō dolōre sunt mōtī.

Postrīdiē eius diēī Iāsōn, tempestātem satis idōneam esse
arbitrātus, tranquillum enim mare iam erat, ancorās[11] sustulit
et pauca mīlia passuum prōgressus, ante noctem ad Mȳsiam[12]
pervēnit. Ibi multās hōrās in ancorīs exspectāre coāctus
25 est; ā nautīs enim cōgnōverat aquae cōpiam quam sēcum

habērent iam deësse, quam ob causam quīdam ex Argo-
nautīs in terram ēgressī aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum in
numerō erat Hylās[13] quidam, puer pulcherrimus, quī dum
fontem[14] quaerit comitēs suōs āmīsit. Nymphae[15] autem,
quae fontem incolēbant, cum adulēscentem vīdissent, eī per- 5
suādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret; et cum ille dīceret
sē hōc nōn factūrum esse, puerum vī abstulērunt.

Comitēs ēius, postquam Hylam āmīssum esse animad-
vertērunt, māgnō cum dolōre diū frūstrā quaerēbant; Her-
culēs autem et Polyphēmus, quī vestīgia[16] puerī longius[17] 10
secūtī erant, ubi tandem ad lītus rediērunt, Iāsonem solvisse
cōgnōvērunt.

[1] **Argonautae** (Argo + nautae),
   -ārum, m. plur. *the Argo-
   nauts.*
[2] **vehor**, *to sail* (pass. of **vehō**, -ere,
   vexī, vectus).
[3] **excipiō** (ex + capiō), *to receive,
   welcome.*
[4] **coörior**, -īrī, coörtus, *to arise.*
[5] **cursum tenēre**, *to keep* (direct)
   the course.
[6] **obscūrus**, -a, -um, *dark.*
[7] **vī et armīs**, hendiadys, *by force
   of arms.*

[8] **ēgredī prohibēbant**, imperf. *tried
   to keep them from landing.*
[9] **lītus**, -oris, n. *sea-shore.*
[10] **pūgnātum est**, supply a suitable
   subject from the meaning of
   the verb.
[11] **ancora**, -ae, f. *anchor.*
[12] **Mȳsia**, -ae, f. *Mysia*, a country
   in Asia Minor.
[13] **Hylās**, -ae, m. *Hylas.*
[14] **fōns**, -tis, m. *a spring.*
[15] **nympha**, -ae, f. *nymph.*
[16] **vestīgium**, -ī, n. *track.*

[17] **longius**, *too far.*

4. PHINEUS AND THE HARPIES

Post haec Argonautae ad Thrāciam[1] cursum[2] tenuērunt
et postquam ad oppidum māgnum nāvem appulerant[3] in
terram ēgressī sunt. Ibi cum ab incolīs quaesīssent[4] quis 15
rēgnum ēius regiōnis obtinēret, certiōrēs factī sunt Phī-
neum[5] quendam tum rēgem esse. Cōgnōvērunt etiam hunc
caecum[6] esse et dūram poenam patī. Missa enim erant ā
Iove[7] mōnstra, quae capita mulierum, corpora avium[8] habē-
bant. Propter hās avēs, quae Harpȳiae[9] appellābantur, 20
Phīneī vīta erat dūrissima. Nam quotiēns[10] cibus rēgī a

servīs adferēbātur, hōc eum Harpȳiae statim spoliābant.
Et nisi Argonautae hōc ipsō tempore vēnissent, nōn erat
dubium quīn cibī inopiā miserrimus rēx esset mortuus.

Simul atque audīvit eōs in suōs fīnīs ēgressōs esse, mag-
5 nopere gāvīsus est.   Sciēbat enim quantam opīniōnem
virtūtis Argonautae habērent nec dubitābat quīn sibi aux-
ilium ferrent.   Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit, quī Iāsonem
sociōsque ad sē vocāret.

Eō cum vēnissent, Phīneus prōposuit quantō in perīculō
10 esset, et pollicitus est sē māgna praemia datūrum esse, sī
illī sē iūvissent.   Argonautae negōtium māgnō studiō sus-
cēpērunt, et ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge cēnāre[11] voluērunt;
simul atque autem incēpērunt, Harpȳiae domum iniērunt et
cibum auferre cōnābantur.   Argonautae prīmum avēs gladiīs
15 petiērunt; sed cum vidērent hōc nihil prōdesse, duo ex
eōrum numerō quibus erant ālae,[12] impetum in eās dēsuper[13]
fēcērunt.   Quod cum sēnsissent Harpȳiae, rē novā perter-
ritae statim fūgērunt neque posteā umquam rediērunt.

[1] **Thrācia, -ae,** f. *Thrace,* a district
     west of the Black Sea.
[2] **cursus,** *course.*
[3] **appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus** (ad +
     pellō), *to bring up* (to land).
[4] **quaesīssent,** contracted form of
     quaesīvissent.
[5] **Phīneus, -ī,** m. *Phineus.*

[6] **caecus, -a, -um,** *blind.*
[7] **Iuppiter, Iovis,** m. *Jupiter.*
[8] **avis, -is,** f. *bird.*
[9] **Harpȳia, -ae,** f. *a harpy.*
[10] **quotiēns,** *as often as.*
[11] **cēnō, -āre,** *to dine.*
[12] **āla, -ae,** f. *wing.*
[13] **dēsuper,** *from above.*

5.   THE SYMPLEGADES

Hōc factō, Phīneus ut prō tantō beneficiō grātiās ageret,
20 Iāsonem certiōrem fēcit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs[1] effugere[2]
posset.   Symplēgadēs autem duo erant saxa[3] ingentī māg-
nitūdine, quae ā Iove posita erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis ad
Colchida[4] pervenīret.   Haec   parvō intervāllō[5] in marī
natābant, et sī quid in medium spatium[6] vēnerat, incrēdibilī[7]
25 celeritāte concurrēbant.

Postquam igitur ā Phīneō dēmōnstrātum est quid facien-

dum esset, Iāsōn sublātīs ancorīs nāvem solvit et mīlia
passuum ferē vīgintī progressus ad Symplēgadēs appropin-
quāvit; tum in mediā navī stāns[8] columbam[9] quam in
manū tenēbat ēmīsit.[10] Illa celeriter per medium spatium
volāvit[11] et priusquam montēs concurrērunt incolumis effūgit 5
caudā[12] tantum[13] āmissā. Tum montēs iterum discessērunt;
antequam autem rūrsus concurrerent, Argonautae, bene intel-
legentēs omnem spem salūtis in celeritāte positam esse,[14]
vehementer rēmīs[15] contendērunt et nāvem incolumem per-
dūxērunt.[16] Hōc factō dīs maximās grātiās ēgērunt quōrum 10
auxiliō ē tantō perīculō servātī essent; bene enim sciēbant
nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem ita fēlīciter ēvēnisse.[17]

[1] **Symplēgadēs**, two mythical
  rocks in the Black Sea.
[2] **effugiō** (ex + fugiō), *to escape.*
[3] **saxum**, -ī, n. *rock.*
[4] **Colchida**, Greek acc. for **Col-
  chidem.**
[5] **parvō intervāllō**, *a small distance
  apart.*
[6] **spatium**, -ī, n. *space.*
[7] **incrēdibilis**, -e, *incredible, amaz-
  ing.*
[8] **stō**, -āre, stetī, stātūrus, *to stand.*

[9] **columba**, -aė, f. *dove.*
[10] **ēmittō** (ē + mittō), *to let go.*
[11] **volō**, -āre, *to fly.*
[12] **cauda**, -ae, f. *tail.*
[13] **tantum**, adv. *only.*
[14] **in . . . positus esse**, *to depend
  .on . . .*
[15] **rēmus**, -ī, m. *oar;* **rēmīs con-
  tendere**, *to row* (hard).
[16] **perdūcō** (per + dūcō), *to bring
  through.*
[17] **ēveniō** (ē + veniō), *to result, turn
  out.*

6. AEETES AND HIS DAUGHTER

Brevī tempore Argonautae ad flūmen quoddam vēnērunt,
quod in fīnibus Colchōrum[1] erat. Ibi cum nāvem appulis-
sent et in terram ēgressī essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētem 15
contendērunt et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi
trāderētur. Ille cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argo-
nautae vēnissent, īrātus[2] est et diū dīcēbat sē numquam
vellus trāditūrum esse.

Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Iāsonem nōn sine auxiliō 20
deōrum hōc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā pollicitus
est sē vellus trāditūrum,[3] sī Iāsōn labōrēs duōs difficillimōs

14

anteā perfēcisset; et cum Iāsōn dīxisset sē ad omnia pe-
rīcula suscipienda parātum esse, quid fierī vellet ostendit.
Prīmum iungendī[4] erant duo taurī[5] atrōcissimī, quī īgnem
exspīrābant.[6] Tum, hīs iūnctīs, ager quīdam arandus[7] erat
5 et dentēs[8] dracōnis[9] serendī.[10] Hīs rēbus audītīs Iāsōn, etsī
rem esse summī perīculī intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc
occāsiōnem[11] āmitteret, negōtium suscēpit.

At Mēdēa,[12] rēgis fīlia, amōre Iāsonis capta ubi audīvit
tam perīculōsum negōtium eum susceptūrum esse, trīstissima
10 erat.   Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prō-
posuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut Iāsōn morerētur. Quae cum
ita essent, Mēdēa, quae summam scientiam medicīnae[13] habē-
bat, hōc cōnsilium iniit.   Mediā nocte clam ex urbe excessit
et postquam in montīs fīnitimōs vēnit herbās quāsdam
15 carpsit[14]; tum sūcō[15] expressō[16] unguentum[17] parāvit quod
vī suā corpus faceret dūrius nervōsque[18] cōnfīrmāret. Hōc
factō Iāsonī unguentum dedit, praecēpit[19] autem ut eō diē
quō istī labōrēs cōnficiendī essent, corpus suum et arma man-
oblineret.[20] Iāsōn, etsi paene omnibus māgnitūdine et vīri-
20 bus corporis praestāret, tamen hōc cōnsilium sequī constituit.

[1] Colchī, -ōrum, m. *the Colchians.*
[2] īrāscor, -ī, īrātus, *to become
    angry.*
[3] traditūrum, supply esse.
[4] iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *to
    yoke.*
[5] taurus, -ī, m. *bull.*
[6] exspīrō, -āre, *to breathe out.*
[7] arō, -āre, *to plough.*
[8] dēns, -tis, m. *tooth.*
[9] dracō, -ōnis, m. *dragon.*
[10] serō, -ere, sēvī, satus, *to sow.*
[11] occāsiō, -ōnis, f. *chance, oppor-
    tunity.*

[12] Mēdēa, -ae, f. *Medea.*
[13] medicīna, -ae, f. *medicine.*
[14] carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptus, *to
    pluck.*
[15] sūcus, -ī, m. *juice.*
[16] exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus,
    to press out.
[17] unguentum, -ī, n. *ointment.*
[18] nervus, -ī, m. *sinew.*
[19] praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus
    (prae + capiō), *to give in-
    structions, tell.*
[20] oblinō, -ere, -lēvī, -litus, *to
    anoint, smear.*

7. SOWING THE DRAGON'S TEETH

Ubi is diēs vēnit quem rēx ad arandum agrum ēdīxerat,
Iāsōn ēiusque comitēs prīmā lūce ad locum cōnstitūtum con-

vēnērunt. Ibi stabulum¹ ingēns repperit in quō taurī con-
tinēbantur; tum portīs apertīs² eōs in lūcem trāxit³ et
summā cum difficultāte iugum⁴ imposuit. At Aeētēs, cum
vidēret taurōs nihil contrā Iāsonem facere posse, māgnopere
mīrātus est; nesciēbat enim fīliam suam auxilium eī dedisse. 5

Tum Iāsōn omnibus aspicientibus⁵ agrum arāre coepit,
quā in rē tantā dīligentiā ūsus est ut duābus hōrīs tōtum
opus cōnfēcerit. Hōc factō ad locum ubi rēx erat adiit⁶
et dentīs dracōnis postulāvit. Quōs ubi accēpit, in agrum
quem arāverat māgnā cum cūrā sparsit.⁷ Hōrum autem 10
dentium nātūra erat eius modī ut in eō locō ubi sparsī
essent virī armātī mīrō⁸ quōdam modō orīrentur.⁹

Nōndum tamen Iāsōn tōtum opus cōnfēcerat; imperāverat
enim eī Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs, quī ē dentibus orīrentur, sōlus
interficeret. Postquam igitur omnīs dentīs in agrum sparsit, 15
Iāsōn dēfessus quiētī sē trādidit, dum virī istī crēscerent.¹⁰
Paucās hōrās dormiēbat; paulō ante noctem subitō excitātus
rem ita esse ut praedictum¹¹ erat cōgnōvit; nam in omnibus
agrī partibus virī ingentī māgnitūdine corporis, gladiīs has-
tīsque armātī, mīrō modō ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc animad- 20
versō Iāson id faciendum esse putābat quod Mēdēa prae-
cēperat. Itaque ingēns saxum in mediōs virōs¹² coniēcit.¹³
Illī undique ad locum concurrērunt cum quisque sibi id
axum nesciō cūr habēre vellet. Dēnique hastīs et gladiīs
inter sē ācerrimē pūgnāre coepērunt, et cum hōc modō plūrimī 25
occīsī essent reliquōs vulneribus cōnfectōs Iāsōn facile sōlus
interfēcit.

stabulum, -ī, n. *stable.*
aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, *to open.*
trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, *to
drag, pull.*
iugum, -ī, n. *yoke.*
aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *to
look on.*
adeō (ad + eō), *to go to.*
spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus, *to
sow, scatter.*

⁸ mīrus, -a, -um, *strange, wonder-
ful.*
⁹ orior, -īrī, ortus, *to spring up,
rise.*
¹⁰ crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, *to grow.*
¹¹ praedīcō (prae + dīcō), *to foretell.*
¹² in mediōs virōs, *into the midst
of the men.*
¹³ coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to
hurl.*

8. MEDEA'S FLIGHT

At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cōgnōvit Iāsonem labōrem prōpositum
cōnfēcisse, magis etiam īrāscēbātur; nec iam dubitābat
enim[1] quīn Mēdēa auxilium eī tulisset.   Mēdēa autem,
cum intellegeret sē in māgnō fore[2] perīculō, sī in patris
5 rēgnō mānsisset, fugā salūtem petere cōnstituit.   Omnibus
igitur ad fugam parātīs mediā nocte clam cum frātre
Absyrtō[3] effūgit et quam celerrimē ad locum ubi Argō[4]
erat properāvit.   Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Iāsonis sē
prōiēcit[5] et multīs cum lacrimīs[6] ōrābat eum, nē in tantō
10 perīculō mulierem relinqueret quae eī tantum[7] prōfuisset.
Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat per ēius auxilium ā taurīs sē ser-
vātum esse, laetē eam excēpit et postquam causam veniendī
audīvit, hortātus est nē patrem timēret.   Tum pollicitus
est brevissimō tempore sē cum eā in nāvī suā profectūrum
15 esse.

[1] nec iam . . . enim, *for . . . no
   longer.*
[2] fore = futūram esse.
[3] Absyrtus, -ī, m. *Absyrtus.*
[4] Argō, -ūs, f. *the Argo*, the ship of
   the Argonauts.
[5] prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *to
   throw.*
[6] lacrima, -ae, f. *tear.*
[7] tantum, *so much.*

9.   FINDING THE FLEECE

Posterō diē Iāsōn cum sociīs suīs māne nāvem dēdūxit
tempestātem idōneam nactī ad eum locum rēmīs contende-
runt, quō in locō Mēdēa vellus occultātum esse dēmōnstrāvi-
Quō cum vēnissent Iāsōn in terram ēgressus est et sociīs i
20 lītore relictīs quī nāvem tuērentur, ipse cum Mēdēā in silvā
viam cēpit.   Pauca mīlia passuum per silvam prōgressu
vellus quod quaerēbat in altā arbore vīdit.   Id tamen au
ferre rēs erat summae difficultātis; nōn modo enim locu
ipse nātūrā et manū[1] mūnītus erat, sed etiam dracō quīdar
25 ingentī māgnitūdine arborem custōdiēbat.[2]

At Mēdēa quae ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus medicīna e

summam scientiam habuit, rāmum[3] quem ex arbore proximā
dēripuerat[4] unguentō suō oblēvit. Hōc factō ad locum adiit
et dracōnem, quī faucibus[5] apertīs adventum eōrum exspectā-
bat, hōc rāmō tetigit.   Cum eō modō effēcisset ut dracō
dormīret, Iāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit et cum 5
Mēdēā quam celerrimē sē recēpit.

Quae dum in silvā geruntur, eī quī in lītore relictī erant
animō anxiō[6] reditum[7] Iāsonis exspectābant; bene enim
sciēbant id negōtium summī esse perīculī.   Postquam igitur
ad noctem frūstrā exspectāverant, dē ēius salūte dēspērāre 10
coepērunt nec dubitābant quīn mortuus esset.   Quae cum ita
essent, sibi contendendum esse exīstimāvērunt, ut auxilium
ducī ferrent, et dum proficīscī parant lūmen quoddam mīrum
inter arborēs subitō cōnspiciunt.[8] Māgnopere mīrātī quae
causa esset ēius reī ad locum concurrunt.   Quō cum vēnis- 15
sent, Iāsonī et Mēdēae venientibus occurrērunt[9] et vellus
aureum lūminis ēius causam esse cōgnōvērunt. Omnī tandem
timōre sublātō, māgnō cum gaudiō[10] ducem suum excēpērunt
et dīs grātiās ēgērunt quod rēs ita fēlīciter ēvēnisset.

[1] **nātūrā et manū,** *by nature and by hand,* i.e. *naturally and artificially.*
[2] **custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus,** *to guard.*
[3] **rāmus, -ī,** m. *branch.*
[4] **dēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus,** *to tear down.*
[5] **faucēs, -ium,** f. plur. *jaws.*
[6] **anxius, -a, -um,** *anxious.*
[7] **reditus, -ūs,** m. *return* (redeō).
[8] **cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus,** *to spy, catch sight of.*
[9] **occurrō,** *to meet* (with dat.).
[10] **gaudium, -ī,** n. *joy.*

10. THE RACE WITH THE KING

Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cōnscen- 20
dērunt[1] et sublātīs ancorīs prīmā vigiliā solvērunt; neque
enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt in eō locō manēre.   At
rēx Aeētēs, quī iam ante eīs nōn cōnfīsus erat, ubi cōgnōvit
fīliam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās fūgisse sed etiam ad
vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, multō vehementius īrā- 25
tus est.   Nāvem longam quam celerrimē dēdūcī iussit et
mīlitibus impositīs fugientīs secūtus est.

Argonautae, quī bene sciēbant rem esse perīculōsissimam,
summīs vīribus rēmīs contendēbant. Cum tamen nāvis quā
vehēbantur ingentī esset māgnitūdine, nōn eādem celeritāte
quā Colchī prōgredī poterant. Quae cum ita essent, nōn
5 dubium fuit quīn a Colchīs sequentibus captī essent, nisi
Mēdēa, paene omnī spē āmissā, hōc atrōx cōnsilium iniisset.

Erat cum eā in nāvī Argonautārum, ut dīximus, frāter,
nōmine Absyrtus, quem ex urbe fugiēns sēcum abdūxerat.[2]
Hunc puerum Mēdēa interficere cōnstituit eō cōnsiliō ut
10 membrīs[3] ēius in mare coniectīs cursum Colchōrum im-
pedīret; prō certō enim sciēbat Aeētem, cum membra fīlī
vīdisset, nōn longius secūtūrum esse, neque opīniō eam fe-
fellit[4]; omnia enim ita ēvēnērunt ut Mēdēa spērāverat.
Aeētēs, ubi prīmum membra vīdit, ad ea conligenda[5] nāvem
15 consistere iussit; quae dum geruntur, Argonautae, nōn inter-
missō labōre, brevī tempore multa mīlia passuum ab eō
locō prōgressī erant neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam
ad flūmen Ēridanum[6] pervēnērunt. At Aeētēs nihil sibi
prōfutūrum esse arbitrātus sī longius prōgriderētur, trīstī
20 animō domum revertit.

[1] cōnscendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsus, *to
board, ascend.*
[2] abdūcō (ab + dūcō), *to take away.*
[3] membrum, -ī, n. *limb.*
[4] fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus, *to de-
ceive, disappoint.*
[5] conligo,-ere,-lēgī,-lēctus, (con +
legō), *to gather up.*
[6] Ēridanus, -ī, m. *the Po.*

11. HOME AGAIN

Tandem post multa perīcula Iāsōn in eundem locum rediit
unde profectus erat. Tum ē nāvī ēgressus statim ad Peliam
vēnit et vellere aureō mōnstrātō[1] postulāvit ut rēgnum sibi
trāderētur; Peliās enim pollicitus erat, sī Iāsōn vellus rettu-
25 lisset,[2] sē rēgnum eī trāditūrum.

Postquam Iāsōn ostendit quid fierī vellet, Peliās prīmum
nihil respondit, sed diū in eōdem trīstī animō permānsit;
tandem ita locūtus est. "Vidēs mē aetāte iam esse cōn-

neque dubium est quīn diēs suprēmus[4] mihi adsit.[5]
igitur mihi dum vita manēbit hōc imperium obtinēre;
ostquam ego ē vītā discesserō, tū rēgnum sōlus habē-
His verbīs adductus Iāsōn respondit sē factūrum[6]
le rogāsset.[7]

5

rō, -āre, *to show, display.*
  -rre, rettulī, relātus, *to*
 back.
neō (per+maneō), *to con-*
 , *remain.*

[4] suprēmus, -a, -um, *the last* (of life).
[5] adsum, *to be at hand.*
[6] factūrum, supply esse.
[7] rogāsset, contracted form for rogāvisset.

12. THE OLD MADE YOUNG

ous rēbus cōgnitīs Mēdēa īrāta et rēgnī cupiditāte
a cōnstituit mortem rēgī ipsa īnferre.   Hōc cōnsti-
d fīliās rēgis vēnit atque ita locūta est.   "Vidētis
i vestrum aetāte iam esse cōnfectum neque ad labōrem
dī ferendum satis validum esse.   Vultisne eum rūrsus 10
m fierī?"   Tum fīliae rēgis hīs verbīs audītīs ita re-
runt.   "Hōc nōn fierī potest.   Quis enim umquam ē
venis factus est?"   At Mēdēa respondit, "Scītis mē
nae summam habēre scientiam.   Nunc igitur vōbīs
strābō quō modō haec rēs fierī possit."   15
  dictō, cum arietem[1] aetāte iam cōnfectum interfē-
membra ēius in vās[2] aēneum[3] coniēcit et īgnī factō
et herbās quāsdam īnfūdit.[4]   Tum, dum aqua effer-
et,[5] carmen magicum[6] cantābat.[7]   Post breve tempus
vāse exsiluit[8] et integrīs vīribus per agrōs currēbat.[9] 20
ı fīliae rēgis hanc rem māgnopere mīrantur, Mēdēa ita
est.   "Vidētis quantam vim habeat medicīna.   Vōs
sī vultis patrem vestrum in adulēscentem mūtārī, id
ēcī ipsae faciētis.   Vōs patris membra in vās cōni-
go herbās magicās dabō."   Quibus audītīs fīliae rēgis 25
um quod dederat Mēdēa nōn neglegendum[10] putāvē-
Patrem igitur Peliam interfēcērunt et membra ēius in
neum cōniēcērunt; nōn enim dubitābant quīn hōc

maximē eī prōfutūrum esset. At rēs nōn ita ēvēnit ut spē-
rāverant, Mēdēa enim nōn eāsdem herbās dedit quibus ipsa
ūsa erat. Itaque, postquam diū frūstrā exspectāvērunt,
patrem suum rē vērā mortuum esse intellēxērunt.

5 Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa spērābat sē cum coniuge suō
rēgnum acceptūram esse; at cīvēs, cum dē Peliae morte
cōgnōvissent, vehementer īrātī et Iāsonem et Mēdēam ē fīni-
bus suīs expulērunt.

<div style="display:flex">

[1] ariēs, -etis, m. *ram.*
[2] vās, vāsis, n. *vessel.*
[3] aēneus, -a, -um, *copper, made of copper.*
[4] īnfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *to pour in.*
[5] effervēscō, -ere, *to boil up.*

[6] magicus, -a, -um, *magical.*
[7] cantō, -āre, *to sing.*
[8] exsiliō, -īre, -siluī, *to leap out.*
[9] currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, *to run.*
[10] neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *to disregard.*

</div>

13. POOR GLAUCE!

Post haec Iāsōn et Mēdēa ad urbem Corinthum [1] vēnērunt,
10 cūius urbis Creōn [2] quīdam rēgnum tum obtinēbat. Erat
autem Creontī fīlia ūna, nōmine Glaucē. Quam cum vīdisset
Iāsōn amāvit eamque in mātrimōnium dūcere [3] voluit.

At Mēdēa, ubi intellēxit quae ille in animō habēret, iūre
iūrandō [4] cōnfīrmāvit [5] id eum numquam factūrum esse. Hō
15 igitur cōnsilium iniit. Vestem parāvit tam pulchram u
nēmō ēius similem umquam vīderit. Hanc unguentō su
oblēvit cūius vīs tanta erat ut sī quis eam vestem tetigisse
corpus ēius īgnī ūrerētur. [6] Vix igitur vestem tetiger
Glaucē, cum dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit
20 paulō post inter dūrissimōs cruciātūs [7] ē vītā excessit.

<div style="display:flex">

[1] Corinthus, -ī, f. *Corinth,* a city in Greece.
[2] Creōn, -ontis, m. *Creon.*
[3] in mātrimōnium dūcere, *to marry.*

[4] iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *oath.*
[5] cōnfirmō, *to assert.*
[6] ūrō, -ere, ussī, ustus, *to burn.*

</div>

[7] cruciātus, -ūs, m. *torture, suffering.*

14. THE END OF THE STORY

Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa furōre[1] capta fīliōs suōs inter-
fēcit. Tum māgnum sibi fore perīculum arbitrāta, sī in
Thessaliā manēret, ex eā regiōne fugere cōnstituit. Itaque
Sōlem[2] ōrāvit ut in tantō perīculō auxilium sibi daret. Sōl
autem currum[3] quendam mīsit, cui duo dracōnēs iūnctī 5
erant. In quam cum Mēdēa cōnscendisset, incrēdibilī cele-
ritāte incolumis ad urbem Athēnās pervēnit.

Iāsōn autem post breve tempus mīrō modō occīsus est.
Ille enim, ut ego arbitror, cōnsiliō deōrum sub umbrā nāvis
suae in lītore quondam dormiēbat. Subitō nāvis, quae 10
adhūc[4] ērēcta[5] steterat, in eam partem[6] ubi Iāsōn erat ceci-
dit et virum īnfēlīcem[7] oppressit.

[1] furor, -ōris, m. *madness.*
[2] Sōl, Sōlis, m. *the Sun.*
[3] currus, -ūs, m. *chariot.*
[4] adhūc, *up to this time.*
[5] ērēctus, -a, -um, *straight, erect.*
[6] pars, *direction, side.*
[7] īnfēlīx, -cis, *unfortunate.*

u

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

529.   FIRST DECLENSION

Stem in *ā*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom., Voc.	rosa	rosae	fīlia	fīliae
Gen.	rosae	rosārum	fīliae	fīliārum
Dat.	rosae	rosīs	fīliae	fīliābus
Acc.	rosam	rosās	fīliam	fīliās
Abl.	rosā	rosīs	fīliā	fīliābus

530.   SECOND DECLENSION

Stem in *o*   *2 a*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom., Voc.	servus, serve	servī	dōnum	dōna
Gen.	servī	servōrum	dōnī	dōnōrum
Dat.	servō	servīs	dōnō	dōnīs
Acc.	servum	servōs	dōnum	dōna
Abl.	servō	servīs	dōnō	dōnīs

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom., Voc.	puer	puerī	ager	agrī
Gen.	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum
Dat.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs
Acc.	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs
Abl.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	vir	virī	deus	deī, diī, dī
GEN.	virī	virōrum	deī	deōrum, deum
DAT.	virō	virīs	deō	deīs, diīs, dīs
ACC.	virum	virōs	deum	deōs
ABL.	virō	virīs	deō	deīs, diīs, dīs.

THIRD DECLENSION

531.   Mute Stems

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	prīnceps	rēx	mīles
GEN.	prīncipis	rēgis	mīlitis
DAT.	prīncipī	rēgī	mīlitī
ACC.	prīncipem	rēgem	mīlitem
ABL.	prīncipe	rēge	mīlite

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs
GEN.	prīncipum	rēgum	mīlitum
DAT.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus
ACC.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs
ABL.	prīncipibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	vōx	obses	virtūs	caput
GEN.	vōcis	obsidis	virtūtis	capitis
DAT.	vōcī	obsidī	virtūtī	capitī
ACC.	vōcem	obsidem	virtūtem	caput
ABL.	vōce	obside	virtūte	capite

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs	capita
GEN.	vōcum	obsidum	virtūtum	capitum
DAT.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtūtibus	capitibus
ACC.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs	capita
ABL.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtūtibus	capitibus

532.   Liquid and Nasal Stems

SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	cōnsul	victor	homō
Gen.	cōnsulis	victōris	hominis
Dat.	cōnsulī	victōrī	hominī
Acc.	cōnsulem	victōrem	hominem
Abl.	cōnsule	victōre	homine

PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	hominēs
Gen.	cōnsulum	victōrum	hominum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	victōribus	hominibus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	hominēs
Abl.	cōnsulibus	victōribus	hominibus

SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	nōmen	honor	corpus
Gen.	nōminis	honōris	corporis
Dat.	nōminī	honōrī	corporī
Acc.	nōmen	honōrem	corpus
Abl.	nōmine	honōre	corpore

PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
Gen.	nōminum	honōrum	corporum
Dat.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus
Acc.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
Abl.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus

533.   Stem in *i*

SINGULAR

Nom., Voc.	cīvis	hostis	caedēs
Gen.	cīvis	hostis	caedis
Dat.	cīvī	hostī	caedī
Acc.	cīvem	hostem	caedem
Abl.	cīve, -ī	hoste	caede

<div align="center">PLURAL</div>

Voc. cīvēs	hostēs	caedes
cīvium	hostium	caedium
cīvibus	hostibus	caedibus
cīvīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	caedīs, -ēs
cīvibus	hostibus	caedibus

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Voc. mare	maria	animal	animālia
maris	———	animālis	animālium
marī	maribus	animālī	animālibus
mare	maria	animal	animālia
marī	maribus	animālī	animālibus

<div align="center">

Mixed Stems

SINGULAR
</div>

Voc. arx	urbs	cliēns
arcis	urbis	clientis
arcī	urbī	clientī
arcem	urbem	clientem
arce	urbe	cliente

<div align="center">PLURAL</div>

Voc. arcēs	urbēs	clientēs
arcium	urbium	clientium
arcibus	urbibus	clientibus
arcēs, -īs	urbēs, -īs	clientēs, -īs
arcibus	urbibus	clientibus

<div align="center">

FOURTH DECLENSION

Stem in *u*

SINGULAR
</div>

Voc. frūctus	cornū	domus
frūctūs	cornūs	domūs
frūctuī, -ū	cornū	domuī, -ō
frūctum	cornū	domum
frūctū	cornū	domū, -ō

PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	frūctūs	cornua	domūs
Gen.	frūctuum	cornuum	domuum, -ōrum
Dat.	frūctibus	cornibus	domibus
Acc.	frūctūs	cornua	domūs, -ōs
Abl.	frūctibus	cornibus	domibus

536. FIFTH DECLENSION

Stem in ē

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom., Voc.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

537. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom., Voc.	bonus, bone	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

SINGULAR

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
niger	**nigra**	**nigrum**
nigrī	**nigrae**	**nigrī**
nigrŏ	**nigrae**	**nigrŏ**
nigrum	**nigram**	**nigrum**
nigrŏ	**nigrā**	**nigrŏ**

PLURAL

nigrī	**nigrae**	**nigra**
nigrŏrum	**nigrārum**	**nigrŏrum**
nigrīs	**nigrīs**	**nigrīs**
nigrŏs	**nigrās**	**nigra**
nigrīs	**nigrīs**	**nigrīs**

SINGULAR

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
miser	**misera**	**miserum**
miserī	**miserae**	**miserī**
miserŏ	**miserae**	**miserŏ**
miserum	**miseram**	**miserum**
miserŏ	**miserā**	**miserŏ**

PLURAL

miserī	**miserae**	**misera**
miserŏrum	**miserārum**	**miserŏrum**
miserīs	**miserīs**	**miserīs**
miserŏs	**miserās**	**misera**
miserīs	**miserīs**	**miserīs**

THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
audāx	**audāx**	**audācēs**	**audācia**
audācis		**audācium**	
audācī		**audācibus**	
audācem	**audāx**	**audācīs, -ēs**	**audācia**
audācī		**audācibus**	

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	frūctūs	cornua	domūs
GEN.	frūctuum	cornuum	domuum, -ōrum
DAT.	frūctibus	cornibus	domibus
ACC.	frūctūs	cornua	domūs, -ōs
ABL.	frūctibus	cornibus	domibus

536.   FIFTH DECLENSION

Stem in ē

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., VOC.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
GEN.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
DAT.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

537.   FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	bonus, bone	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

	SINGULAR		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
DAT.	nigrŏ	nigrae	nigrŏ
ACC.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigrŏ	nigrā	nigrŏ

	PLURAL		
NOM., VOC.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrŏrum	nigrārum	nigrŏrum
DAT.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
ACC.	nigrŏs	nigrās	nigra
ABL.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

	SINGULAR		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	miser	misera	miserum
GEN.	miserī	miserae	miserī
DAT.	miserŏ	miserae	miserŏ
ACC.	miserum	miseram	miserum
ABL.	miserŏ	miserā	miserŏ

	PLURAL		
NOM., VOC.	miserī	miserae	misera
GEN.	miserŏrum	miserārum	miserŏrum
DAT.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
ACC.	miserŏs	miserās	misera
ABL.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

538. THIRD DECLENSION

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
GEN.	audācis		audācium	
DAT.	audācī		audācibus	
ACC.	audācem	audāx	audācīs, -ēs	audācia
ABL.	audācī		audācibus	

542. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior	optimus
malus	pēior	pessimus
māgnus	māior	maximus
parvus	minor	minimus
multus	plūs	plūrimus
facilis, *easy*	facilior	facillimus
difficilis, *difficult*	difficilior	difficillimus
similis, *like*	similior	simillimus
dissimilis, *unlike*	dissimilior	dissimillimus
humilis, *low*	humilior	humillimus
gracilis, *slender*	gracilior	gracillimus
(prae, *before*)	prior, *former*	prīmus, *first*
(citrā, *this side of*)	citerior, *hither*	citimus, *hithermost*
(ultrā, *beyond*)	ulterior, *farther*	ultimus, *farthest, last*
(in, intrā, *in, within*)	interior, *inner*	intimus, *inmost*
(prope, *near*)	propior, *nearer*	proximus, *nearest, next*
exterus	exterior	extrēmus
īnferus	īnferior	īnfimus (īmus)
posterus	posterior	postrēmus
superus	superior	suprēmus (summus)

543.   IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene, *well*	melius	optimē
male, *ill*	pēius	pessimē
multum, *much*	plūs	plūrimum
parum, (*too*) *little*	minus	minimē
diū, *long*	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, *often*	saepius	saepissimē
	magis, *more*	maximē

NUMERALS

ARDINAL	ORDINAL	ROMAN
ūna, ūnum, *one*	prīmus, -a, -um, *first*	I
luae, duo, *two*	secundus (alter), *second*	II
ria, *three*	tertius, *third*	III
ıor	quārtus	IIII *or* IV
ue	quīntus	V
	sextus	VI
n	septimus	VII
	octāvus	VIII
ı	nōnus	VIIII *or* IX
	decimus	X
im	ūndecimus	XI
cim	duodecimus	XII
ım (decem et trēs)	tertius decimus	XIII
ıordecim	quārtus decimus	XIIII *or* XIV
ecim	quīntus decimus	XV
m	sextus decimus	XVI
ıdecim	septimus decimus	XVII
vīgintī (octōdecim)	duodēvīcēnsimus	XVIII
īgintī (novendecim)	ūndēvīcēnsimus	XVIIII *or* XIX
ı	vīcēnsimus	XX
ı ūnus	vīcēnsimus prīmus	XXI
r ūnus et vīgintī)	(ūnus et vīcēnsimus, *etc.*)	
tā	trīcēnsimus	XXX
āgintā	quadrāgēnsimus	XXXX *or* XL
uāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus	L
ıntā	sexāgēnsimus	LX
ıgintā	septuāgēnsimus	LXX
ıntā	octōgēnsimus	LXXX
;ıntā	nōnāgēnsimus	LXXXX *or* XC
m	centēnsimus	C
m (et) ūnus, *etc.*	centēnsimus prīmus, *etc.*	CI
ıtī, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus	CC
ıtī	trecentēnsimus	CCC
ingentī	quadringentēnsimus	CCCC
entī	quīngentēnsimus	IƆ *or* D
ıtī	sescentēnsimus	DC
ıgentī	septingentēnsimus	DCC
;entī	octingentēnsimus	DCCC
ıntī	nōngentēnsimus	DCCCC

CARDINAL	ORDINAL	ROMAN
1,000. mīlle	mīllēnsimus	CIƆ, or M
5,000. quīnque mīlia	quīnquiēns mīllēnsimus	IƆƆ
10,000. decem mīlia	deciēns mīllēnsimus	CCIƆƆ
100,000. centum mīlia	centiēns mīllēnsimus	CCCIƆƆƆ

PRONOUNS

545.   PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE

SINGULAR

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON
Nom., Voc.	ego	tū	———
Gen.	meī	tuī	suī
Dat.	mihī, mī	tibī	sibī
Acc.	mē	tē	sē (sēsē)
Abl.	mē	tē	sē (sēsē)

PLURAL

Nom., Voc.	nōs	vōs	———
Gen.	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī	suī
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibī
Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē (sēsē)
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)

546.   DEMONSTRATIVE AND INTENSIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
I.	is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
G.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
A.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	īdem	e'adem	idem
G.	ēius'dem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
A.	eun'dem	eandem	idem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	PLURAL		
N.	eīdem / iīdem	eaedem	e'adem
G.	eōrun'dem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīs'dem / iīs'dem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem
A.	eōs'dem	eāsdem	e'adem
Ab.	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
A.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Ab.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
A.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

547. RELATIVE *& Interrog.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

548. INTERROGATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

549. INDEFINITE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	aliquis (aliquĭ)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
GEN.	alicū'ius	alicūius	alicūius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	ali'quibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
Gen.	cūius'dam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
Dat.	cuīdam	cuīdam	cuīdam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

(a) quisque, *each ;* quisquam, *any at all ;* sī quis, *if any ;* nē quis, *that not (lest) any ;* are all declined like quis (quī) interrogative. Of quisquis only quisquis and quidquid are common. Quīcumque is declined like quī relative.

VERBS

550. FIRST CONJUGATION

Stem in *ā*

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
amō, *I love, am loving, do love.*	amem [1]
amās, *you love (thou lovest).*	amēs
amat, *he (she, it) loves.*	amet
amāmus, *we love.*	amēmus
amātis, *you love.*	amētis
amant, *they love.*	ament

[1] The meaning of the subjunctive varies so much, according to the construction in which it is used, that no one meaning can be given here.

INDICATIVE   SUBJUNCTIVE

IMPERFECT

amābam, *I loved, was loving, did love.*   amārem
amābās, *you loved.*   amārēs
amābat, *he loved.*   amāret

amābāmus, *we loved.*   amārēmus
amābātis, *you loved.*   amārētis
amābant, *they loved.*   amārent '

FUTURE

amābō, *I shall love.*
amābis, *you will love.*
amābit, *he will love.*

amābimus, *we shall love.*
amābitis, *you will love.*
amābunt, *they will love.*

PERFECT

amāvī, *I loved, have loved.*   amāverim
amāvistī, *you loved,* etc.   amāveris
amāvit, *he loved,* etc.   amāverit

amāvimus, *we loved,* etc.   amāverīmus
amāvistis, *you loved,* etc.   amāverītis
amāvērunt (-ēre), *they loved,* etc.   amāverint

PLUPERFECT

amāveram, *I had loved.*   amāvissem
amāverās, *you had loved.*   amāvissēs
amāverat, *he had loved.*   amāvisset

amāverāmus, *we had loved.*   amāvissēmus
amāverātis, *you had loved.*   amāvissētis
amāverant, *they had loved.*   amāvissent

FUTURE PERFECT

amāverō, *I shall have loved.*
amāveris, *you will have loved.*
amāverit, *he will have loved.*

amāverimus, *we shall have loved.*
amāveritis, *you will have loved.*
amāverint, *they will have loved.*

<div align="center">IMPERATIVE</div>

PRES. amā, *love (thou)*.   amāte, *love (ye)*.
FUT. amātō, *thou shalt love*.   amātōte, *ye shall love.*
      amātō, *he shall love*.   amantō, *they shall love*.

<div align="center">INFINITIVES</div>

PRES. amāre, *to love*.
PERF. amāvisse, *to have loved*.
FUT. amātūrus, -a -um esse, *to be about to love*.

<div align="center">PARTICIPLES</div>

PRES. amāns, -antis, *loving*.
FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love*.

GERUND		SUPINE
NOM. ——		amātum, *to love*.
GEN. amandī, *of loving*.		amātū, *to love*.
DAT. amandō, *for loving*.		
ACC. amandum, *loving*.		
ABL. amandō, *by loving*.		

<div align="center">PASSIVE VOICE</div>

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
amor, *I am loved, am being loved*.	amer
amāris (-re), *you are loved*.	amēris (-re)
amātur, *he is loved*.	amētur
amāmur, *we are loved*.	amēmur
amāminī, *you are loved*.	amēminī
amantur, *they are loved*.	amentur
IMPERFECT	
amābar, *I was loved, was being loved*.	amārer
amābāris (-re), *you were loved*.	amārēris (-re)
amābātur, *he was loved*.	amārētur
amābāmur, *we were loved*.	amārēmur
amābāminī, *you were loved*.	amārēminī
amābantur, *they were loved*.	amārentur

INDICATIVE   SUBJUNCTIVE

FUTURE

amābor, *I shall be loved.*
amāberis (-re), *you will be loved.*
amābitur, *he will be loved.*

amābimur, *we shall be loved.*
amābiminī, *you will be loved.*
amābuntur, *they will be loved.*

PERFECT

amātus,
-a, -um
{ sum, *I was loved, have been loved.*
  es, *you were loved.*
  est, *he was loved.* }

amātus,
-a, -um
{ sim
  sīs
  sit }

amātī,
-ae, -a
{ sumus, *we were loved.*
  estis, *you were loved.*
  sunt, *they were loved.* }

amātī,
-ae, -a
{ sīmus
  sītis
  sint }

PLUPERFECT

amātus,
-a, -um
{ eram, *I had been loved.*
  erās, *you had been loved.*
  erat, *he had been loved.* }

amātus,
-a, -um
{ essem
  essēs
  esset }

amātī,
-ae, -a
{ erāmus, *we had been loved.*
  erātis, *you had been loved.*
  erant, *they had been loved.* }

amātī,
-ae, -a
{ essēmus
  essētis
  essent }

FUTURE PERFECT

amātus,
-a, -um
{ erō, *I shall have been loved.*
  eris, *you will have, etc.*
  erit, *he will have, etc.* }

amātī,
-ae, -a
{ erimus, *we shall have, etc.*
  eritis, *you will have, etc.*
  erunt, *they will have, etc.* }

IMPERATIVE

PRES. amāre, *be (thou) loved.*   amāminī, *be (ye) loved.*

FUT.   amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*   ———

      amātor, *he shall be loved.*   amantor, *they shall be loved.*

APPENDIX

INFINITIVES

PRES. amāri, *to be loved.*
PERF. amātus, -a, -um esse, *to have been loved.*
FUT. amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE   GERUNDIVE

amātus, -a, -um, *loved, having been*   amandus, -a -um, *to be loved.*
loved.

551.   PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION
ACTIVE

	INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	amātūrus, -a, -um sum	}	*I am about to love.*	amātūrus, -a, -um sim	
IMPERF.	"	eram		"	essem
FUT.	"	erō			
PERF.	"	fuī		"	fuerim
PLUP.	"	fueram		"	fuissem
FUT. PERF.	"	fuerō			

INFINITIVES

PRES.   amātūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to love.*
PERF.   "   -a, -um fuisse, *to have been about to love.*

PASSIVE

	INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	amandus, -a, -um sum	}	*I must be loved.*	amandus, -a, -um sim	
IMPERF.	"	eram		"	essem
FUT.	"	erō			
PERF.	"	fuī		"	fuerim
PLUP.	"	fueram		"	fuissem
FUT. PERF.	"	fuerō			

INFINITIVES

PRES.   amandus, -a, -um esse, *to have to be loved.*
PERF.   "   -a, -um fuisse, *to have had to be loved.*

552.   SECOND CONJUGATION

Stem in *ē*

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT		PRESENT	
habeō	habeam	habeor	habear
habēs	habeās	habēris (-re)	habeāris (-re)
habet	habeat	habētur	habeātur
habēmus	habeāmus	habēmur	habeāmur
habētis	habeātis	habēminī	habeāminī
habent	habeant	habentur	habeantur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
habēbam	habērem	habēbar	habērer
habēbās	habērēs	habēbāris (-re)	habērēris (-re)
habēbat	habēret	habēbātur	habērētur
habēbāmus	habērēmus	habēbāmur	habērēmur
habēbātis	habērētis	habēbāminī	habērēminī
habēbant	habērent	habēbantur	habērentur
FUTURE		FUTURE	
habēbō		habēbor	
habēbis		habēberis (-re)	
habēbit		habēbitur	
habēbimus		habēbimur	
habēbitis		habēbiminī	
habēbunt		habēbuntur	
PERFECT		PERFECT	
habuī	habuerim	habitus, -a, -um { sum es est	habitus, -a, -um { sim sīs sit
habuistī	habuerīs		
habuit	habuerit		
habuimus	habuerīmus	habitī, -ae, -a { sumus estis sunt	habitī, -ae, -a { sīmus sītis sint
habuistis	habuerītis		
habuērunt (-ēre)	habuerint		

CTIVE — *Continued*   PASSIVE — *Continued*

PLUPERFECT   PLUPERFECT

eram	habuissem		eram		essem
erās	habuissēs	habitus, -a, -um	erās	habitus, -a, -um	essēs
erat	habuisset		erat		esset
erāmus	habuissēmus		erāmus		essēmus
erātis	habuissētis	habitī, -ae, -a	erātis	habitī, -ae, -a	essētis
erant	habuissent		erant		essent

FUTURE PERFECT   FUTURE PERFECT

erō,		erō
eris	habitus, -a, -um	eris
erit		erit
erimus		erimus
eritis	habitī, -ae, -a	eritis
erint		erunt

IMPERATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
habē	habēte	habēre	habēminī
habētō	habētōte	habētor	———
habētō	habentō	habētor	habentor

INFINITIVES

habēre	habērī
habuisse	habitus, -a, -um esse
habitūrus, -a, -um esse	habitum īrī

PARTICIPLES   PERFECT PARTICIPLE

habēns, -entis   habitus, -a, -um
habitūrus, -a, -um

GERUNDIVE

habendus, -a, -um

GERUND

habendī	ACC.	habendum
habendō	ABL.	habendō

SUPINE

habitum   habitū

553.   PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

PRES. habitūrus, -a, -um sum, *I am about to have*, etc.

PASSIVE

PRES. habendus, -a, -um sum, *I must be had*, etc.

554.   THIRD CONJUGATION

Stem in ĕ

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT		PRESENT	
regō	regam	regor	regar
regis	regās	regeris (-re)	regāris (-re)
regit	regat	regitur	regātur
regimus	regāmus	regimur	regāmur
regitis	regātis	regiminī	regāminī
regunt	regant	reguntur	regantur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
regēbam	regerem	regēbar	regerer
regēbās	regerēs	regēbāris (-re)	regerēris (-re)
regēbat	regeret	regēbātur	regerētur
regēbāmus	regerēmus	regēbāmur	regerēmur
regēbātis	regerētis	regēbāminī	regerēminī
regēbant	regerent	regēbantur	regerentur
FUTURE		FUTURE	
regam		regar	
regēs		regēris (-re)	
reget		regētur	
regēmus		regēmur	
regētis		regēminī	
regent		regentur	

ACTIVE — *Continued*		PASSIVE — *Continued*	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

PERFECT / PERFECT

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
rēxī	rēxerim	rēctus, -a, -um { sum, es, est	rēctus, -a, -um { sim, sīs, sit
rēxistī	rēxerīs		
rēxit	rēxerit		
rēximus	rēxerīmus	rēctī, -ae, -a { sumus, estis, sunt	rēctī, -ae, -a { sīmus, sītis, sint
rēxistis	rēxerītis		
rēxērunt (-re)	rēxerint		

PLUPERFECT / PLUPERFECT

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
rēxeram	rēxissem	rēctus, -a, -um { eram, erās, erat	rēctus, -a, -um { essem, essēs, esset
rēxerās	rēxissēs		
rēxerat	rēxisset		
rēxerāmus	rēxissēmus	rēctī, -ae, -a { erāmus, erātis, erant	rēctī, -ae, -a { essēmus, essētis, essent
rēxerātis	rēxissētis		
rēxerant	rēxissent		

FUTURE PERFECT / FUTURE PERFECT

INDICATIVE	INDICATIVE
rēxerō	rēctus, -a, -um { erō, eris, erit
rēxeris	
rēxerit	
rēxerimus	rēctī, -ae, -a { erimus, eritis, erunt
rēxeritis	
rēxerint	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRES.	rege	regite	regere	regiminī
FUT.	regitō	regitōte	regitor	———
	regitō	reguntō	regitor	reguntor

INFINITIVES

PRES.	regere	regī
PERF.	rēxisse	rēctus -a, -um esse
FUT.	rēctūrus -a, -um esse	rēctum īrī

ACTIVE — *Continued*		PASSIVE — *Continued*

PARTICIPLES

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

PRES.   regēns, -entis

rēctus, -a, -um

FUT.   rēctūrus, -a, -um

GERUNDIVE

regendus, -a, -um

GERUND

GEN.   regendī   ACC.   regendum

DAT.   regendō   ABL.   regendō

SUPINE

rēctum   rēctū

555.   PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

PRES.   rēctūrus, -a, -um sum, *I am about to rule*, etc.

PASSIVE

PRES.   regendus, -a, -um sum, *I must be ruled*, etc.

556.   THIRD CONJUGATION — *Continued*

Verbs in -*iō*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT		PRESENT	
capiō	capiam	capior	capiar
capis	capiās	caperis (-re)	capiāris (-re
capit	capiat	capitur	capiātur
capimus	capiāmus	capimur	capiāmur
capitis	capiātis	capiminī	capiāminī
capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
capiēbam	caperem	capiēbar	caperer
FUTURE		FUTURE	
capiam		capiar	
capiēs		capiēris (-re)	
capiet, etc.		capiētur, etc.	

ACTIVE— *Continued*		PASSIVE— *Continued*	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PERFECT		**PERFECT**	
cēpī	cēperim	captus, -a, -um sum	captus, -a, -um sim
PLUPERFECT		**PLUPERFECT**	
cēperam	cēpissem	captus, -a, -um eram	captus, -a, -um essem
FUTURE PERFECT		**FUTURE PERFECT**	
cēperō		captus, -a, -um erō	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRES.	cape	capite	capere	capiminī
FUT.	capitō	capitōte	capitor	———
	capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVES

PRES.	capere		capī
PERF.	cēpisse		captus, -a, -um esse
FUT.	captūrus, -a, -um esse		captum īrī

PARTICIPLES		PERFECT PARTICIPLE
PRES.	capiēns, -ientis	captus, -a, -um
FUT.	captūrus, -a, -um	
		GERUNDIVE

GERUND	SUPINE	capiendus, -a, -um
capiendī, etc.	captum, captū	

557. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

PRES. captūrus, -a, -um sum, *I am about to take*, etc.

PASSIVE

PRES. capiendus, -a, -um sum, *I must be taken*, etc.

16

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Stem in ī

558.   audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT		**PRESENT**	
audiō	audiam	audior	audiar
audīs	audiās	audīris (-re)	audiāris (-re)
audit	audiat	audītur	audiātur
audīmus	audiāmus	audīmur	audiāmur
audītis	audiātis	audīminī	audiāminī
audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur
IMPERFECT		**IMPERFECT**	
audiēbam	audīrem	audiēbar	audīrer
audiēbās	audīrēs	audiēbāris (-re)	audīrēris (-re)
audiēbat	audīret	audiēbātur	audīrētur
audiēbāmus	audīrēmus	audiēbāmur	audīrēmur
audiēbātis	audīrētis	audiēbāminī	audīrēminī
audiēbant	audīrent	audiēbantur	audīrentur
FUTURE		**FUTURE**	
audiam		audiar	
audiēs		audiēris (-re)	
audiet		audiētur	
audiēmus		audiēmur	
audiētis		audiēminī	
audient		audientur	
PERFECT		**PERFECT**	
audīvī	audīverim	audītus, -a, -um sum es est	audītus, -a, -um sim sīs sit
audīvistī	audīveris		
audīvit	audīverit		
audīvimus	audīverīmus	audītī, -ae, -a sumus estis sunt	audītī, -ae, -a sīmus sītis sint
audīvistis	audīverītis		
audīvērunt (-re)	audīverint		

͏TIVE— *Continued*   **PASSIVE**— *Continued*

͏TIVE   **SUBJUNCTIVE**   **INDICATIVE**   **SUBJUNCTIVE**

PLUPERFECT   **PLUPERFECT**

͏ram	audīvissem	audītus, -a, -um	eram	audītus, -a, -um	essem
͏rās	audīvissēs		erās		essēs
͏rat	audīvisset		erat		esset

erāmus	audīvissēmus	audītī, -ae, -a	erāmus	audītī, -ae, -a	essēmus
erātis	audīvissētis		erātis		essētis
erant	audīvissent		erant		essent

FUTURE PERFECT   **FUTURE PERFECT**

erō	audītus, -a, -um	erō
eris		eris
erit		erit

erimus	audītī, -ae, -a	erimus
eritis		eritis
erint		erunt

IMPERATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
audī	audīte	audīre	audīminī
audītō	audītōte	audītor	———
audītō	audiuntō	audītor	audiuntor

INFINITIVES

audīre	audīrī
audīvisse	audītus, -a, -um esse
audītūrus, -a, -um esse	audītum īrī

PARTICIPLES   **PERFECT PARTICIPLE**

audiēns, -ientis   audītus, -a, -um

audītūrus, -a, -um

                          GERUNDIVE

RUND   **SUPINE**   audiendus, -a, -um

ndī, etc.   audītum, audītū

559.   PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

PRES.   audītūrus, -a, -um sum, *I am about to hear*, etc.

PASSIVE

PRES.   audiendus, -a, -um sum, *I must be heard*, etc.

560.   DEPONENT VERBS

CONJ. I	hortor,	hortārī,	hortātus,	*to urge*
CONJ. II	vereor,	verērī,	veritus,	*to fear*
CONJ. III	sequor,	sequī,	secūtus,	*to follow*
CONJ. IV	potior,	potīrī,	potītus,	*to get possession*

	I	II	III	IV
PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris (-re)	verēris (-re)	sequeris (-re)	potīris (-re)
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
	essem	essem	essem	essem

IMPERATIVE

hortāre, etc.   verēre, etc.   sequere, etc.   potīre, etc.

INFINITIVES

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus

GERUNDIVE

hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND

hortandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	potītum, -tū

(a) Notice that deponent verbs have the active form of the future infinitive and the participles of both voices.

IRREGULAR VERBS

561. sum, esse, fuī

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum, *I am.*	sumus, *we are.*
es, *you are.*	estis, *you are.*
est, *he (she, it) is.*	sunt, *they are.*

IMPERFECT

eram *I was.*	erāmus, *we were.*
erās, *you were.*	erātis, *you were.*
erat, *he was.*	erant, *they were.*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be.*	erimus, *we shall be.*
eris, *you will be.*	eritis, *you will be.*
erit, *he will be.*	erunt, *they will be.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL

PERFECT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
fuī, *I have been, was.*	fuimus, *we have been, were.*
fuistī, *you have been, were.*	fuistis, *you have been, were.*
fuit, *he has been, was.*	fuērunt (-ēre), *they have been, were.*

PLUPERFECT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
fueram, *I had been.*	fuerāmus, *we had been.*
fuerās, *you had been.*	fuerātis, *you had been.*
fuerat, *he had been.*	fuerant, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
fuerō, *I shall have been.*	fuerimus, *we shall have been.*
fueris, *you will have been.*	fueritis, *you will have been.*
fuerit, *he will have been.*	fuerint, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT		PERFECT	
sim [1]	sīmus	fuerim	fuerīm
sīs	sītis	fuerīs	fuerīti
sit	sint	fuerit	fuerint

IMPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
essem	essēmus	fuissem	fuissēr
essēs	essētis	fuissēs	fuissēt
esset	essent	fuisset	fuisse

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	es, *be (thou).*	este, *be (ye).*
FUT.	estō, *thou shalt be.*	estōte, *ye shall be.*
	estō, *he shall be.*	suntō, *they shall be.*

INFINITIVES	PARTICIPLE
PRES. esse, *to be.*	FUT. futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*
PERF. fuisse, *to have been.*	
FUT. futūrus, -a, -um esse (fore), *to be about to be.*	

---

[1] The meaning of the subjunctive varies so much, according to the construction in which it is used, that no one meaning can be given here.

562. possum, posse, potuī, *to be able, can*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	possum, *I can.*	possim
	potes, *you can.*	possīs
	potest, *he can.*	possit
	possumus, *we can.*	possīmus
	potestis, *you can*	possītis
	possunt, *they can.*	possint
IMPF.	poteram, *I could.*	possem
FUT.	poterō, *I shall be able.*	
PERF.	potuī, *I could.*	potuerim
PLUP.	potueram, *I had been able.*	potuissem
F. P.	potuerō, *I shall have been able.*	

	INFINITIVES	PARTICIPLE
PRES.	posse, *to be able.*	potēns, -entis, adj.
PERF.	potuisse, *to have been able.*	*powerful.*

563. prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *to help*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	prōsum, *I help.*	prōsim
	prōdes	prōsīs
	prōdest	prōsit
	prōsumus	prōsīmus
	prōdestis	prōsītis
	prōsunt	prōsint
IMPF.	prōderam, *I was helping.*	prōdessem
FUT.	prōderō, *I shall help.*	
PERF.	prōfuī, *I helped.*	prōfuerim
PLUP.	prōfueram, *I had helped.*	prōfuissem
F. P.	prōfuerō, *I shall have helped.*	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVES
prōdes, prōdeste, etc.	PRES.	prōdesse
PARTICIPLE	PERF.	prōfuisse
prōfutūrus, -a, -um *about to help.*	FUT.	prōfutūrus, -a, -um esse.

564.   volō, velle, voluī, —,   *to be willing, will, wish*
    nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —,   *to be unwilling, will not*
    mālō, mālle, māluī, —,   *to be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō, *I wish.*	nōlō, *I will not.*	mālō, *I prefer.*
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	———	nōlī, nōlīte	———
FUT.	———	nōlītō, etc.	———

INFINITIVES

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	———

5.   eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itūrus, *to go*

INDICATIVE   SUBJUNCTIVE

eō, īs, it   eam, eās, eat
īmus, ītis, eunt   eāmus, eātis, eant
ībam, ībās, ībat   īrem, īrēs, īret
ībāmus, ībātis, ībant   īrēmus, īrētis, īrent
ībō, ībis, ībit
ībimus, ībitis, ībunt
(īvī) iī   (īverim) ierim
(īveram) ieram   (īvissem) iissem
(īverō) ierō

                          IMPERATIVE

     PRES.   ī, īte   FUT.   ītō, ītō, ītōte, euntō

                          INFINITIVES

īre   PERF. (īvisse) iisse   FUT. itūrus esse

PARTICIPLES   GERUNDIVE

iēns, euntis, euntī, etc.   eundus, -a, -um
itūrus, -a, -um   GERUND   SUPINE
                            eundī, etc.   itum, itū

) The compounds adeō, *approach*, ineō, *enter*, and some
rs, are transitive.   They are inflected as follows in the passive:

INDICATIVE   SUBJUNCTIVE

adeor   adīmur   PRES. adear   PERF. aditus sim
adīris (-re) adīminī   IMPF. adīrer   PLUP. aditus essem
adītur   adeuntur   INFINITIVES
adībar   adīrī,   aditus esse
adībor
aditus sum   PARTICIPLE
aditus eram   aditus, -a, -um
aditus erō   GERUNDIVE
                              adeundus, -a, -um

) In the perfect system of eō and its compounds the forms
v are extremely rare.

566.   fīō, fierī, factus sum, *to be made, become*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	fīō	fīam
	fīs	fīās
	fit	fīat
	fīmus	fīāmus
	fītis	fīātis
	fīunt	fīant
IMPF.	fīēbam	fierem
FUT.	fīam	
PERF.	factus sum	factus sim
PLUP.	factus eram	factus essem
F. P.	factus erō	

	IMPERATIVE				INFINITIVES	
PRES.	fī	fīte		PRES.	fierī
FUT.	fītō	fītōte		PERF.	factus, -a, -um,
	fītō	fīuntō		FUT.	factum īrī

PERFECT PARTICIPLE	GERUNDIVE
factus, -a, -um	faciendus, -a, -um

567.   ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bear*

	ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRES.	ferō	feram	feror	ferar
	fers	ferās	ferris (-re)	ferāris (-re)
	fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
	ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
	fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
IMPF.	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
PLUP.	tuleram	tulissem	lātus eram	lātus essem
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

⊃TIVE — *Continued*   PASSIVE — *Continued*

IMPERATIVE

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
s. fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
'. fertō	fertōte	fertor	———
fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVES

s. ferre   ferrī
F. tulisse   lātus esse
. lātūrus esse   lātum īrī

PARTICIPLES   .   PERFECT PARTICIPLE

s. ferēns, -entis   lātus, -a, -um

. lātūrus, -a, -um
                                        GERUNDIVE
GERUND   ferendus, -a, -um

ndī, -dō, -dum, -dō

SUPINE

lātum, -tū

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The following vocabulary contains all the words used in the exercises to the end of Lesson LXXIII. Such new words as occur in the Reading Exercises after that lesson are found only at the foot of the section where they are first used, and are not included in this vocabulary. The present infinitive only is given of verbs conjugated like amō. The component parts of compound verbs are shown in parentheses immediately after the verbs; allied words follow the meanings as in the vocabularies to the lessons. A numeral after the meanings refers to the lesson in which the word is first used; an *s* after such a numeral refers to the supplementary exercise in that lesson.

A

ā, ab, adverbial prefix and prep. w. abl. *from, by,* 11.

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (ab + dō), *to put away, to hide;* sē abdere, *to hide one's self;* abditus, -a, -um, *hidden,* 60.

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (ab + eō), *to go off, go away,* 61.

absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus (ab + sum), *to be away, distant, absent,* 18.

ac, conj. *and* (see atque).

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (ad + cēdō), *to approach, draw near,* 60.

accidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *to fall, happen,* 52.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (ad + capiō), *to receive, accept, get,* 54.

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj. *sharp, keen, active,* 26.

aciēs, -ēī, f. *line of battle,* 32.

ācriter, adv. *sharply, eagerly, fiercely* (ācer), 33.

ad, adverbial prefix and prep. w. acc. *to, toward;* w. names of places, *in the vicinity of,* 17.

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (ad + dūcō), *to lead to, bring, induce,* 60.

adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (ad + ferō), *to bear to, bring up,* 63.

aditus, -ūs, m. *approach, arrival, access* (adeō), 36.

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *to help, aid,* 36.

administrō, -āre, *to manage, carry on,* 35.

admoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (ad + moveō), *to move to, bring against,* 69 *s.*

adorior, -īrī, -ortus (ad + orior), *to rise up against, attack,* 62.

241

adpropinquō, -āre, with dat. *to approach* (propinquus), 21.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (ad + sum), *to be present*, 33.

adulēscēns, -ntis, adj. *young;* as a subst. *young man*, 36.

adventus, -ūs, m. *arrival, approach*, 35.

aedificium, -ī, n. *building, house* (aedificō), 7.

aedificō, -āre, *to build*, 10.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. *sick, feeble*, 8.

aestās, -ātis, f. *summer*, 25.

aetās, -ātis, f. *age, time of life*, 55.

Āfrica, -ae, f. *Africa*, 38.

ager, agrī, m. *field, land*, 7.

agmen, -inis, n. *column, army on the march* (agō), 32.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *to drive, lead, do, discuss;* grātiās agere, *to express thanks*, 38.

agricola, -ae, m. *farmer* (ager), 4.

aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron. *some one, some, any* (decl. § 549), 67.

alius, -a, -ud, adj. *another, other;* alius . . . alius, *one . . . another* (decl. § 539), 54.

alter, -era, -erum, adj. *the other of two* (decl. § 539), 54.

altitūdō, -inis, f. *height, depth* (altus), 36.

altus, -a, -um, adj. *high, deep*, 27.

amīcitia, -ae, f. *friendship, alliance* (amīcus), 13.

amīcus, -ī, m. *friend* (amō), 4.

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (ā + mittō), *to let go, lose*, 38.

amō, -āre, *to love* (conj. § 550), 1.

amor, -ōris, m. *love, affection* (amō), 21.

amplector, -ī, amplexus, *to embrace*, 69 s.

angustiae, -ārum, f. plur. *narrow pass*, 65 s.

animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus (animum + advertō), *to turn the mind to, notice*, 56.

animal, -ālis, n. *living creature, animal*, 22.

animus, -ī, m. *mind, courage, soul, spirit*, 14.

annus, -ī, m. *year*, 25.

ante, adv. and prep. w. acc. *before*, 19, 31.

anteā, adv. *before, previously* (ante), 55.

antequam (ante + quam), conj. *before* (see § 446), 55.

antīquus, -a, -um, adj. *ancient, old* (ante), 7.

appellō, -āre, *address, call, name*, 11.

apud, prep. w. acc. *with, before, by, near, among*, 21.

aqua, -ae, f. *water*, 34.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v. *to think, judge*, 57.

arbor, -oris, f. *tree*, 21.

argentum, -ī, n. *silver, money*, 5.

arma, -ōrum, n. plur. *arms, weapons* (armō), 12.

armō, -āre, *to arm, equip*, 26.

arx, arcis, f. *citadel*, 23.

Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur. *Athens,* 62 *s.*

Athēniēnsis, -e, adj. *Athenian;* as subst. *an Athenian,* 62 *s.*

atque (ac), conj. *and, and also,* 38.

atrōx, -ōcis, adj. *savage, frightful,* 26.

auctōritās, -ātis, f. *influence, authority,* 36.

audācia, -ae, f. *boldness, daring* (**audāx**), 20.

audācter, adv. *boldly* (**audāx**), 33.

audāx, -ācis, adj. *bold, daring,* 26.

audeō, -ēre, ausus, semi-dep. v. *to dare* (see § 560), 50.

audiō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *to hear* (conj. § 558), 39.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *to increase, enlarge, magnify,* 35.

aurum, -ī, n. *gold,* 54.

aut, conj. *or;* aut . . . aut, *either . . . or,* 41.

auxilium, -ī, n. *help, assistance,* 8.

avidus, -a, -um, adj. *eager, desirous of,* 21.

B

Belgae, -ārum, m. plur. *the Belgians,* 15.

bellum, -ī, n. *war,* 6.

bene, adv. *well* (**bonus**), 33.

beneficium, -ī, n. *kindness, favor* (**bene, faciō**), 54.

bonus, -a, -um, adj. *good* (decl. § 64), 1 ff.

brevis, -e, adj. *brief, short,* 26.

Britannī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Britons,* 52.

C

cadō, -ere, cecidī, casūrus, *to fall,* 39.

caedēs, -is, f. *slaughter, massacre* (**caedo**), 22.

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus, *to cut down, kill,* 39.

Caesar, -aris, m. (*Caius Julius*) *Caesar,* 28.

campus, -ī, m. *plain, field,* 5.

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *to take, adopt, capture* (conj. § 556), 51.

captīvus, -ī, m. *captive* (**capiō**), 35.

caput, -itis, n. *head,* 20.

carmen, -inis, n. *song, tune,* 72 *s.*

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj. *Carthaginian;* as subst. *a Carthaginian,* 38.

cārus, -a, -um, adj. *dear,* 61.

castra, -ōrum, n. plur. *a fortified camp,* 17.

causa, -ae, f. *cause, reason,* 12; abl. **causā** w. gen. *for the sake of,* 14; **quā dē causā,** *for what reason, why,* 17.

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *to withdraw, yield,* 61.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj. *swift, quick,* 26.

celeritās, -ātis, f. *swiftness, speed* (**celer**), 23.

celeriter, adv. *swiftly, quickly* (**celer**), 20.

centuriō, -ōnis, m. *centurion*, 66.

certus, -a, -um, adj. *fixed*, *determined*, *certain ;* certiōrem facere, *to inform*, 58.

cēterī, -ae, -a, adj. *the rest of, the others*, 8.

✓ cibus, -ī, m. *food*, 54.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m. (*Marcus Tullius*) *Cicero*, 42.

circum, adverbial prefix and prep. w. acc. *around*, 63.

circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (circum + veniō), *to come around, surround, invest*, 69.

✓ citerior, -ius, compar. adj. *hither, nearer ;* superl. citimus, 29.

cīvis, -is, m. and f. *citizen*, 22.

cīvitās, -ātis, f. *citizenship, state* (cīvis), 23.

✓ clam, adv. *secretly*, 43.

✓ clāmor, -ōris, m. *shout*, 21.

⌐ clārus, -a, -um, adj. *bright, clear, famous*, 3 ff.

classis, -is, f. *fleet*, 22.

✓ claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *to close, shut*, 45.

✓ cliēns, -entis, m. *dependent, client*, 23.

✓ coepī, coepisse, coeptus, defect. v. *to begin ;* the present system is supplied by incipiō, -ere, 56.

cōgitō, -āre, *to think about, consider*, 66.

cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *to become acquainted with, learn, recognize*, 56.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus (cum + agō), *to compel, force, collect*, 54.

cohors, -hortis, f. *a cohort*, one tenth of a legion, 23.

collis, -is, m. *hill*, 22.

com-, con-, co-, adverbial prefix = cum, *with, together, completely.*

comes, -itis, m. and f. *companion*, 19.

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (cum + mittō), *to engage in* (battle), *entrust*, 47.

commūnis, -e, adj. *common*, 62.

comparō, -āre (cum + parō), *to get ready, prepare, get together*, 18.

compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *to fill, cover*, 35.

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (cum + cēdō), *to yield, withdraw*, 65.

concilium, -ī, n. *council, conference, meeting*, 18.

concurrō, -ere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursūrus, *to run together, rally*, 67.

condiciō, -ōnis, f. *condition, terms*, 38.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (cum + ferō), *to bring together*, 63.

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (cum + faciō), *to finish, perform, wear out*, 60.

cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus (cum + fīdō), semi-dep. v. *to trust, be confident*, 50, 53.

cōnfīrmō, -āre, *to strengthen, establish*, 25.

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *to join together, unite*, 64.

coniūnx, -iugis, m. or f. *husband* or *wife* (coniungō), 19.

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f. *conspiracy, plot* (coniūrō), 41.

coniūrō, -āre, *to swear together, plot, conspire*, 15.

conlocō, -āre, *to station, place*, 27.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v. *to attempt*, 53.

cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus (cum + sequor), dep. v. *to overtake*, 49.

cōnsilium, -ī, n. *plan, design, counsel*, 18.

cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *to take a position, stop, halt*, 66.

cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *to determine, establish*, 65.

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, *to become accustomed*, 54.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. *custom, habit*, 63.

cōnsul, -is, m. *consul*, 21.

cōnsulō, -ere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus, w. dat. *to have thought for, look out for*; w. acc. *to consult* (a person), 62.

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *to exert one's self, hasten*, 39.

contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (cum + teneō), *to hold back, keep in check*, 34.

continuus, -a, -um, adj. *consecutive, successive*, 25.

contrā, prep. w. acc. *against*, 15.

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (cum + veniō), *to come together, assemble*, 67.

convocō, -āre (cum + vocō), *to call together, assemble*, 17.

cōpia, -ae, f. *plenty, abundance;* plur. cōpiae, *troops, forces*, 14.

cornū, -ūs, n. *horn, wing of an army*, 32.

corpus, -oris, n. *body*, 21.

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj. *daily* (cotīdiē), 53.

cotīdiē, adv. *every day, daily*, 39.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj. *frequent, numerous*, 66.

crūs, crūris, n. *leg*, 69 s.

cum, conj. *when, because, since, although;* cum prīmum, *as soon as* (see §§ 464–472), 55.

cum, prep. w. abl. *with*, 7.

cupiō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *to desire, be eager*, 51.

cūr, interrog. adv. *why*, 44.

cūra, -ae, f. *care* (cūrō), 3.

cūrō, -āre, *to care for, look after*, 4.

cursus, -ūs, m. *running, speed*, 32.

custōs, -ōdis, m. *guard*, 59.

D

dē, prep. w. abl. *from, about, concerning*, 10.

dē-, adverbial prefix, *down, away*.

dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *to owe, ought*, 58.

decem, indecl. adj. *ten*, 28.

17

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus (dē + dō), *to give up, surrender*, 46.

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (dē + dūcō), *to lead away, withdraw*, 51.

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *to defend*, 46.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. *defender*, 31.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (dē + ferō), *to bring down, report*, 63.

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj. *tired out, wearied*, 54.

deinde, adv. *then, secondly, next*, 61.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, *to point out, show*, 58.

dēnique, adv. *finally*, 36.

dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultūrus, *to jump down*, 72 s.

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *to cease, cease from, give up*, 41.

dēspērō, -āre (dē + spērō), *to give up hope, despair*, 53.

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (dē + sum), w. dat. *to fail*, 53.

dēterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus (dē + terreō), *to frighten off, deter*, 35.

deus, -ī, m. *god* (decl. § 530), 12.

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj. *right, on the right hand*, 32.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *to say, tell, speak*, 37.

diēs, -ēī, m. *day*, 32.

differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus (dis + ferō), *to differ*, 69.

difficilis, -e, adj. *difficult* (facilis), 28.

difficultās, -ātis, f. *difficulty, trouble* (difficilis), 36.

dīgnus, -a, -um, adj. *worthy*; w. abl. *worthy of*, 41.

dīligentia, -ae, f. *care, pains, attention*, 14.

dīmicō, -āre, *to fight*, 26.

dis-, dī-, dif-, adverbial prefix, *apart, away*.

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (dis + cēdō), *to go away, depart*, 66.

discessus, -ūs, m. *departure* (discēdō), 44.

dissimilis, -e, adj. *unlike, different* (similis), 28.

diū, adv. *long, for a long time*, 11.

diūtius, adv. comp. of diū.

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *to divide, separate*, 64.

dō, dāre, dēdī, dātus, *to give*, 3 ff.

dolor, -ōris, m. *pain, grief*, 62.

dominus, -ī, m. *master, owner*, 4.

domus, -ūs, f. *house, home* (decl. § 535), 54.

dōnum, -ī, n. *gift* (dō), 5.

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to sleep*, 69 s.

dubitō, -āre, *to doubt, hesitate* (dubius), 47, 51.

dubius, -a, -um, adj. *doubtful*, 13.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *to lead* (dux), 37.

dum, conj. *while, so long as, until* (compare §§ 446, 447), 62.

duo, duae, duo, irreg. adj. *two* (decl. § 540), 53.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj. *hard*, 27.

dux, ducis, m. or f. *leader, guide*, 19.

E

ē, ex, prep. w. abl. *out of, from*, 25.

ē-, ex-, ef-, adverbial prefix, *out of, out, completely*.

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (ē + dūcō), *to lead forth, lead out*, 64.

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (ex + faciō), *to accomplish, bring about, make*, 52.

ego, meī, pers. pron. *I* (decl. § 545), 41.

ēgredior, -ī, ēgressus, dep. v. *to go out, depart, disembark*, 62.

ēius modī, adj. phrase, *of that sort, such*, 61.

enim, conj. *for* (does not stand first in the clause, compare nam), 63.

eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itūrus, *to go* (conj. § 565), 61.

eō, adv. *to that place* (is), 18.

Ēpīrus, -ī, f. *Epirus*, a district in northwestern Greece, 47.

epistula, -ae, f. *letter, epistle*, 3.

eques, -itis, m. *horseman, knight* (equus), 19.

equester, -tris, -tre, adj. *belonging to the cavalry, equestrian* (eques), 26.

equitātus, -ūs, m. *cavalry* (eques), 32.

equus, -ī, m. *horse*, 8.

Eretria, -ae, f. *Eretria*, a town on the island of Euboea, 62 *s.*

errō, -āre, *to wander, take a walk*, 5 ff.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. *sally, sortie*, 64.

et, conj. *and;* et . . . et, *both . . . and*, 1, 23.

etiam, adv. and conj. *also, even*, 31.

etsī (et + sī), conj. *even if, although*, 65.

Eurōpa, -ae, f. *Europe*, 67 *s.*

ēvānēscō, -ere, ēvānuī, *to vanish*, 68 *s.*

excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (ex + cēdō), *to go out, depart*, 65.

excitō, -āre, *to arouse*, 60.

exercitus, -ūs, m. *army*, 32.

exīstimō, -āre, *to think, consider*, 67.

expedītus, -a, -um, perf. part. of expediō, *unencumbered*, 63.

expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus (ex + pellō), *to drive out*, 64.

experior, -īrī, -pertus, dep. v. *to try, prove, experience*, 49.

expūgnō, -āre (ex + pūgnō), *to capture by storm* (compare oppūgnō), 11.

exspectō, -āre, *to look out for, wait for, expect*, 17.

exterior, -ius, comp. of exterus, 29.

exterus, -a, -um, adj. *outer, foreign*, 29.

extrā, prep. w. acc. *outside of*, 66.

extrēmus, -a, -um, superl. of exterus, *last, farthest*, 29.

F

Fabius, -ī, m. *Fabius*, a famous Roman general, 51.

fābula, -ae, f. *story*, 1.

facile, adv. *easily* (facilis), 33.

facilis, -e, adj. *easy*, 26.

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *to do, make ;* pass. fīō, fierī, factus (§ 566), 51.

facultās, -ātis, f. *opportunity*, 60.

fāma, -ae, f. *fame, reputation, report*, 3.

famēs, -is, f. *hunger*.

fēlīciter, adv. *happily, luckily, successfully*, 33.

ferē, adv. *nearly, about, almost*, 64.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bear, carry* (conj. § 567), 63.

fidēs, -eī, f. *faith, fidelity, pledge* (fīdō), 35.

fīdō, -ere, fīsus, semi-dep. v. *to trust*, 50.

fīlia, -ae, f. *daughter ;* dat. and abl. plur. filiābus (filius), 2.

fīlius, -ī, m. *son ;* voc. sing. fīlī, 5.

fīnis, -is, m. *end, limit ;* plu. *boundaries, territory*, 22.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj. *neighboring, bordering on ;* m. plu. as subst. *neighbors* (finis), 13.

fīō, fierī, factus, pass. of faciō, *to be made, happen, result* (conj. § 566), 61.

flūmen, -inis, n. *river*, 23.

fore, fut. inf. of sum (= futūrum esse).

fortis, -e, adj. *brave*, 26.

fortiter, adv. *bravely* (fortis), 11.

fortitūdō, -inis, f. *bravery* (fortis), 55.

fortūna, -ae, f. *fortune*, 55.

fossa, -ae, f. *ditch ;* fossam dūcere, *to dig a ditch*, 65.

frāter, -tris, m. *brother*, 61.

Fredericus, -ī, m. *Frederick (the Great)*, 70 s.

frūctus, -ūs, m. *fruit, profit, result*, 32.

frūmentum, -ī, n. *grain, supplies*, 13.

fruor, fruī, frūctus, dep. v. with abl. *to enjoy*, 49.

frūstrā, adv. *in vain*, 53.

fuga, -ae, f. *flight* (fugō, fugiō), 44.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *to flee* (fuga, fugō), 51.

fugō, -āre, *to put to flight* (fuga, fugiō), 5.

G

Gallia, -ae, f. *Gaul* (France), 12.

Gallus, -a, -um, adj. *of Gaul, Gallic ;* as subst. *a Gaul* (Gallia), 12.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus, semi-dep. v. *to rejoice*, 50, 52.

gēns, gentis, f. *family*, *tribe*, *clan*, 23.

Germānus, -a, -um, adj. *German ;* as subst. *a German*, 25.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *to carry on, perform*, 37.

gladius, -ī, m. *sword*, 6.

Graecia, -ae, f. *Greece*, 3.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj. *Greek ;* as a subst. *a Greek*, 64 s.

grātia, -ae, f. *gratitude, favor, kindness ;* grātiās agere, *to thank ;* grātiam habēre, *to feel grateful*, 34.

grātus, -a, -um, adj. *pleasing, agreeable, grateful* (grātia), 3.

gravis, -e, adj. *heavy, severe, serious*, 27.

graviter, adv. *severely, seriously, deeply* (gravis), 38.

H

habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus, *to have, hold ;* grātiam habēre, *to feel grateful* (conj. § 550), 2 ff.

habitō, -āre, *to live, dwell* (habeō), 5 ff.

Haeduī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Haeduans*, an important people of Gaul, 15.

Hannibal, -alis, m. *Hannibal*, the famous leader of the Carthaginians in the Second Punic War, 51.

hasta, -ae, f. *spear*, 13.

Henrīcus, -ī, m. *Henry*, 59.

herba, -ae, f. *grass*, 8.

hiātus, -ūs, m. *opening*, 72 s.

hīberna, -ōrum, n. plur. *winter quarters*, 34.

hīc, haec, hōc, demons. pron. and adj. *this ;* hīc . . . ille, *the latter . . . the former* (decl. § 546), 15.

hīc, adv. *here, in this place*, 18.

hiemō, -āre, *to spend the winter, to winter* (hiems), 25.

hiems, hiemis, f. *winter*, 25.

hinc, adv. *from here, hence*, 18.

hodiē, adv. (hōc + diē), *to-day*, 39.

homō, -inis, m. and f. *human being, man* (compare vir), 21.

honor, -ōris, m. *honor*, 21.

hōra, -ae, f. *hour, season*, 25.

Horātius, -ī, m. *Horace*, a famous Latin poet, 6.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v. *to encourage, urge, exhort*, 48.

hortus, -ī, m. *garden*, 5.

hostis, -is, m. *enemy*, 22.

hūc, adv. *to this place, hither* (hīc), 18.

humilis, -e, adj. *low*, 28.

I

iam, adv. *already, now, by this time*, 18.

ibi, adv. *there, in that place* (is), 5, 18.

ictus, -ūs, m. *blow, stroke*, 69 s.

īdem, eadem, idem, demons. pron. and adj. *the same* (decl. § 546 ; is), 55.

idōneus, -a, -um, adj. *suitable, fit,* 17.

īgnis, -is, m. *fire,* 22.

ille, illa, illud, demons. pron. and adj. *that;* ille . . . hīc, *the former . . . the latter* (decl. § 546), 15.

illīc, adv. *at that place, there* (ille), 18.

illinc, adv. *from that place, thence* (ille), 18.

illō, adv. *to that place* (ille), 18.

illūc, adv. *to that place* (ille), 18.

impedīmentum, -ī, n. *hindrance;* plur. *baggage* (impediō), 33.

impediō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *to hinder,* 39.

imperātor, -ōris, m. *general* (imperō), 35.

imperītus, -a, -um, adj. *unskilled, inexperienced* (perītus), 58.

imperium, -ī, n. *command, power* (imperō), 35.

imperō, -āre, with dat. *to command, order,* 27.

impetrō, -āre, *to obtain* (one's request), 44.

impetus, -ūs, m. *attack, onset, impulse, force,* 34.

impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (in + pōnō), w. dat. *to put on, mount,* 55.

imprōvīsō, adv. *unexpectedly,* 45.

in, prep. w. acc. and abl. *into, in, on, within,* 5, 18.

in-, adverbial prefix w. verbs, *in, upon, toward;* negative prefix in adjectives, *not.*

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *to set fire to, burn, kindle,* 65.

incertus, -a, -um, adj. *uncertain, unreliable* (certus), 60.

incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (in + capiō), *to begin,* 56.

incitō, -āre, *to urge on, arouse, incite,* 14.

incola, -ae, m. *inhabitant* (incolō), 11.

incolō, -ere, -coluī, —, *to dwell, inhabit* (incola), 66.

incolumis, -e, adj. *unharmed,* 28.

inde, adv. *from that place, thence, then,* 18.

Indī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the (East) Indians,* 68 s.

indīgnus, -a, -um, adj. *unworthy;* w. abl. *unworthy of* (dīgnus), 41.

industria, -ae, f. *industry, zeal,* 14.

ineō, -īre, -iī, -itus (in + eō), *to go into, enter, begin,* 61.

īnferior, -ius, comp. of īnferus, *lower,* 29.

īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (in + ferō), *to bring in, bring upon,* 63.

īnferus, -a, -um, adj. *low,* 29.

īnfimus, -a, -um, superl. of īnferus, *lowest,* 29.

īnfrā, adv. and prep. w. acc. *below,* 66.

ingēns, -ntis, adj. *great, huge, serious,* 38.

inimīcus, -a, -um, adj. *un-friendly ;* as subst. *private enemy* (amīcus), 12.

inīquus, -a, -um, adj. *unequal, unfavorable,* 64.

iniūria, -ae, f. *wrong, injury, outrage,* 58.

inopia, -ae, f. *want, lack, need,* 14.

insīgnis, -e, adj. *distinguished, remarkable, notable,* 28.

īnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *to undertake, establish,* 69.

īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *arrange, draw up,* 64.

īnsula, -ae, f. *island,* 68 *s.*

integer, -gra, -grum, adj. *whole, fresh,* 62.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *to understand,* 56.

inter, adverbial prefix and prep. w. acc. *between, among,* 15.

interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *to cut off,* 68.

intereā, adv. *meanwhile* (inter), 15.

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (inter + faciō), *to kill,* 68.

interior, -ius, comp. adj. *inner* (inter), 29.

intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (inter + mittō), *to stop, interrupt, let pass,* 67.

intimus, -a, -um, superl. of interior, *innermost,* 29.

invītus, -a, -um, adj. *unwilling,* and with adv. force, *unwillingly, against his (her, their) will,* 48.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intens. pron. and adj. *himself, herself, itself, the very* (decl. § 546), 41.

is, ea, id, demons. pron. and adj. *that ; he, she, it* (decl. § 546), 17.

iste, ista, istud, demons. pron. and adj. *that, that of yours* (decl. § 546), 41.

Isthmus, -ī, m. *the Isthmus (of Corinth),* 66 *s.*

ita, adv. *thus, in this way* (is), 26.

Ītalia, -ae, f. *Italy,* 3.

itaque, adv. *therefore* (ita), 6.

item, adv. *likewise, also* (ita), 62.

iter, itineris, n. *journey, march, way,* 21.

iterum, adv. *again, a second time,* 38.

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *to command, order,* 55.

iūdex, -icis, m. *judge* (iūs), 19.

iūdicō, -āre, *to judge* (iūdex, iūs), 66.

iūs, iūris, n. *right, justice, law,* 65.

iuvenis, -is, m. (gen. plur. iuvenum), *a youth,* 22.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *to help, aid,* 17.

L

labor, -ōris, m. *work, labor,* 21.

labōrō, -āre, *to work, toil* (labor), 5.

Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Lacedaemonians,* 63 *s.*

lātus, -a, -um, adj. *broad, wide*, 1.

latus, -eris, n. *side, flank*, 62.

laudō, -āre, *to praise* (laus), 3 ff.

laus, laudis, f. *praise, glory*, 20.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f. *embassy, legation* (lēgātus), 38.

lēgātus, -ī, m. *envoy, ambassador, lieutenant* (lēgātiō), 18.

legiō, -ōnis, f. *legion*, 23.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *to read*, 46.

Leōnidās, -ae, m. *Leonidas*, leader of the Spartans at Thermopylae, 66 *s.*

levis, -e, adj. *light, slight*, 27.

līber, -era, -erum, adj. *free*, 8.

liber, librī, m. *book*, 7.

līberī, -erōrum, m. plur. (*free-born*) *children* (līber), 7.

līberō, -āre, *to free* (līber), 8.

lībertās, -ātis, f. *liberty, freedom* (līber), 64.

licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, impers. v. *it is permitted, one may*, 66.

littera, -ae, f. *letter* (of the alphabet) ; plur. *a letter, an epistle*, 56.

locus, -ī, m. *place, spot ;* plur. loca, n. *places, situation ;* locī, m. *topics*, 17.

longē, adv. *far, at a distance, by far* (longus), 18.

longinquus, -a, -um, adj. *far, remote* (longus), 59.

longus, -a, -um, adj. *long*, 1 ff.

loquor, -ī, locūtus, dep. v. *to speak, talk*, 52.

lūmen, -inis, n. *light*, 70 *s.*

lupa, -ae, f. *she-wolf*, 10.

lupus, -ī, m. *wolf*, 5.

lūx, lūcis, f. *light*, 19.

M

magis, comp. adv. *more ;* superl. maximē, *most* (māgnus), 33, 29.

magister, -trī, m. *master, teacher*, 7.

magistrātus, -ūs, m. *office, magistrate* (magister), 68.

māgnitūdō, -inis, f. *size, greatness* (māgnus), 36.

māgnopere, adv. *greatly*, 37.

māgnus, -a, -um, adj. *great, large, loud*, 1 ff. 29.

māior, -ius, adj. (comp. of māgnus), *larger, elder ;* māiōrēs, *elders, ancestors*, 29.

male, adv. *badly, ill, unsuccessfully* (malus), 59.

mālō, mālle, māluī (magis + volō), *to prefer* (conj. § 564), 59.

malus, -a, -um, adj. *bad, wicked*, 2 ff.

māne, adv. *in the morning, early*, 57.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *to remain, stay*, 34.

manus, -ūs, f. *hand, band, company*, 32.

Marcus, -ī, m. *Marcus*, 4.

mare, maris, n. *sea*, 22.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj. *by the sea, maritime* (mare), 67.

māter, -tris, f. *mother*, 27.

maximē, superl. adv. *most, very much*, 33 ; *certainly !* 70 *s.*

maximus, -a, -um (superl. of māgnus), *greatest*, 29, 14.

medius, -a, -um, adj. *middle, the middle of*, 62.

melior, -ius, adj. (comp. of bonus), *better*, 29.

memoria, -ae, f. *memory*, 43.

mercātor, -ōris, m. *trader, merchant*, 60.

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. *my, mine*, 3.

mī, voc. sing. masc. of meus.

mīles, -itis, m. *soldier, private*, 19.

mīlitāris, -e, adj. *relating to a soldier, military ;* rēs mīlitāris, *the science of war* (mīles), 58.

mīlle, indecl. adj. *a thousand ;* plur. mīlia, -ium ; the plural is used as a substantive, while the singular is an adjective, 59.

Miltiadēs, -is, m. *Miltiades*, the Greek commander at Marathon, 63 *s.*

minimus, -a, -um (superl. of parvus), *smallest, least*, 14, 29.

minor, minus, adj. (comp. of parvus), *less, smaller*, 29.

minus, comp. adv. *less*, 38.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v. *to wonder, wonder at*, 69.

miser, -era, -erum, adj. *wretched, unfortunate*, 8.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *to send, throw* (weapons), 37.

modo, adv. *only, just now ;* nōn modo, *not only*, 65.

modus, -ī, m., *manner, measure*, 55.

moenia, -ium, n. plur. *walls of a city, fortifications*, 22.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *warn, advise*, 48.

mōns, montis, m. *mountain, hill ;* summus mōns, *the top of the hill*, 23.

mōnstrum, -ī, n. *monster*, 68 *s.*

mora, -ae, f. *delay*, 18.

morior, morī, mortuus (moritūrus), dep. v. *to die* (mors), 60.

moror, -ārī, morātus, *to delay* (mora), 53.

mors, mortis, f. *death* (morior), 23.

mōs, mōris, m. *habit, custom*, 66.

mōtus, -ūs, m. *movement*, 68 *s.*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *to move ;* castra movēre, *to break camp ;* sīgna movēre, *to advance*, 34.

mulier, -eris, f. *woman*, 27.

multitūdō, -inis, f. *crowd, multitude*, 41.

multō, adv. *(by) much, by far* (multus), 31.

multus, -a, -um, adj. *much ;* plur. *many*, 2 ff., 29.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *to fortify*, 39.

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f. *fortification, defences* (mūniō), 65.

mūrus, -ī, m. *wall*, 11.

mūs, mūris, m. *mouse*, 72 *s.*

Mūsa, -ae, f. *a muse*, 6.

mūtō, -āre, *to change*, 54.

N

nam, conj. *for* (compare **enim**), 18.

nancīscor, -ī, nactus, dep. v. *to find, obtain*, 62.

narrō, -āre, *to tell, narrate*, 3 ff.

nātiō, -ōnis, f. *race, nation*, 34.

natō, -āre, *to swim*, 68 *s.*

nātūra, -ae, f. *nature*, 17.

nauta, -ae, m. *sailor* (nāvigō), 3.

nāvigō, -āre, *to sail* (nāvis), 4 ff.

nāvis, -is, f. *ship;* nāvis longa, *ship-of-war*, 22.

-ne, interrogative enclitic, 1.

nē, adv. and conj. in expressions of wish and will, *not, that not, in order that not, lest*, 42, 44.

nē . . . quidem, with emphatic word between, *not even*, 41.

nec, *and not* (see **neque**).

necessārius, -a, -um, adj. *necessary, needful*, 36.

nēmō, nēminis, m. *no one, nobody*, 46.

neque (nec), conj. *and not;* neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*, 21, 35.

Nerviī, -ōrum, m. plur. *the Nervians*, a tribe of Gaul, 15.

neuter, neutra, neutrum (ne + uter), *neither* (decl. § 539), 61.

niger, nigra, nigrum, adj. *black*, 8.

nihil, indecl. n. *nothing*, 60.

nisi, conj. (ne + sī), *if not, unless*, 53.

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, with dat. *to harm, injure;* nocēns, *hurtful, guilty*, 46.

noctū, adv. *by night* (nox), 63.

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. *by night, in the night* (nox), 66.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (ne + volō), *to be unwilling, not to wish* (conj. § 564), 59.

nōmen, -inis, n. *name*, 21.

nōn, adv. *not;* nōn modo . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also*, 2, 65.

nōndum, adv. (nōn + dum), *not yet*, 37.

nōnne, interrog. adv. (nōn + ne), expecting a positive answer, 52.

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj. (non + nūllus), *some*, 68.

nōs, pers. pron. *we*, 41.

noster, nostra, nostrum, poss. adj. *our* (nōs), 18.

novem, indecl. adj. *nine*, 65.

novus, -a, -um, adj. *new*, 2 ff.

nox, noctis, f. *night;* sub nocte, *toward night*, 64, 25.

nūllus, -a, -um, adj. (ne + ūllus), *no, none* (decl. § 539), 46.

numerus, -ī, m. *number*, 15.

numquam, adv. *never*, 49.

nunc, adv. *now* (compare **iam**), 15.

nūntiō, -āre, *to announce, report* (nūntius), 15.

nūntius, -ī, m. *messenger, message*, 34.

O

ob, prep. w. acc. *on account of, owing to*, 48; adverbial prefix, *toward, against*.

oblīvīscor, -ī, -lītus, dep. v. *to forget*, used with an objective genitive, 53.

obses, -idis, m. and f. *hostage*, 20.

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *to besiege, blockade*, 45.

obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (ob + teneō), *to hold, keep, possess*, 41.

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *to cut down, kill*, 46.

occultō, -āre, *to hide*, 27.

occupō, -āre, *to seize*, 28.

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, *to go to meet, oppose*, 55.

ōceanus, -ī, m. *the ocean*, 4.

odium, -ī, n. *hatred, dislike*, 14.

offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus (ob + ferō), *to bring to, offer*, 65.

omnis, -e, adj. *all, every*, 26.

opera, -ae, f. *work, services;* operam dare, *to take pains*, 67.

opertus, -a, -um, adj. *covered*, 57.

opīniō, -ōnis, f. *belief, expectation, reputation*, 63.

oportet, -ēre, oportuit, impers. v. *it is proper, one ought*, 60.

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. *belonging to a town;* as subst. *a townsman* (oppidum), 11.

oppidum, -ī, n. *town*, 6.

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus (ob + premō), *to overwhelm, surprise*, 56.

oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f. *siege, attack* (oppūgnō), 41.

oppūgnō, -āre (ob + pūgnō), *to besiege, attack*, 11.

optimus, -a, -um, superl. of bonus, *best, excellent*, 17.

opus, operis, n. *work*, 60.

ōrdō, -inis, m. *order, rank*, 28.

ōrō, -āre, *to beseech, ask*, 47.

ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus, *to show*, 54.

P

pācō, -āre, *to pacify, subdue* (pāx), 15.

paene, adv. *almost* (compare ferē), 53.

palam, adv. *openly, publicly* (compare clam), 43.

parātus, -a, -um, perf. part. of parō, used as an adj. *ready, prepared*, 17.

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, with dat. *to obey*, 52.

parō, -āre, *to make ready, prepare*, 15.

pars, partis, f. *part, share*, 23.

parvus, -a, -um, adj. *small, little*, 1 ff., 29.

passus, -ūs, m. *step, pace;* as a measure of length, about five feet; mīlle passūs, *5000 (Roman) feet, a (Roman) mile;* mīlia passuum, *miles*, 59.

pater, patris, m. *father*, 27.

patior, -ī, passus, dep. v. *to suffer, bear, allow*, 57.

patria, -ae, f. *native land* (pater), 2.

paucī, -ae, -a, adj. plur. *few*, 36.

paulātim, adv. *little by little, gradually*, 63.

paulō, adv. *by a little, slightly*, 31.

paulum, adv. *a little, a short distance*, 66.

pāx, pācis, f. *peace* (pācō), 19.

pecūnia, -ae, f. *money*, 53.

pedes, -itis, m. *foot-soldier;* plur. *infantry* (pēs), 19.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. *belonging to the infantry, foot* (pedes), 67.

peditātus, -ūs, m. *infantry, foot* (pedes), 67.

pēior, pēius, adj. (comp. of malus), *worse*, 29.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *to drive, rout*, 39.

per, adverbial prefix and prep. w. acc. *through, over, across, by means of*, 20.

perfacilis, -e (per + facilis), adj. *very easy*, 68.

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (per + faciō), *to accomplish, finish*, 54.

perīculōsus, -a, -um, adj. *full of danger, dangerous* (perīculum), 61.

perīculum, -ī, n. *danger*, 5.

perītus, -a, -um, adj. *skilled, experienced*, 58.

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (per + mittō), *to let go, allow, entrust*, 9.

Persa, -ae, m. *a Persian*, 62 s.

persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, with dat. *to persuade*, 47.

perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus (per + terreō), *to frighten thoroughly, terrify*, 53.

pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, — (per + teneō), *to reach, concern*, 69.

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (per + veniō), *to come through, arrive*, 39.

pēs, pedis, m. *foot*, 27.

pessimus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of malus), *worst*, 29.

petō, -ere, petīvī (-iī), petītus, *to beg, ask, seek, go for*, 37.

pictus, -a, -um, adj. *embroidered*, 72 s.

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque, adj. plur. *many, very many, the majority*, 63.

plērumque, adv. *for the most part, generally*, 68.

plūrimus, -a, -um (superl. of multus), *most, very many*, 29.

plūs, plūris, adj. (comp. of multus), *more*, 29.

poena, -ae, f. *punishment*, 48.

poēta, -ae, m. *poet*, 3.

polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus, dep. v. *to promise*, 56.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *to place, put*, 58.

pōns, pontis, m. *bridge*, 23.

populus, -ī, m. *people*, 6.

porta, -ae, f. *gate, door*, 45.

portō, -āre, *to carry*, 13.

portus, -ūs, m. *harbor, port*, 45.

poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, *to demand, ask*, 39.

possum, posse, potuī (potis + sum), *to be able, can* (conj. § 562), 55.

post, adv. and prep. w. acc. *after, behind*, 27, 31.

posteā, adv. *afterward* (post), 33.

posterior, -ius, adj. (comp. of posterus), *later*, 29.

posterus, -a, -um, adj. *the following, next ;* plur. posterī, *descendants*, 29.

postquam (post + quam), conj. *after*, 37.

postrēmus, -a, -um (superl. of posterus), *last, latest*, 29.

postrīdiē (posterus + diēs), adv. *the next day*, 56.

postulō, -āre, *to demand, ask*, 18.

potestās, -ātis, f. *power, opportunity*, 59.

potior, -īrī, potītus, dep. v. with abl. *to get possession of*, 49.

potius, adv. *rather*, 43.

praeda, -ae, f. *booty*, 17.

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (prae + faciō), w. dat. *to set over, put in command of*, 55.

praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (prae + mittō), *to send forward*, 46.

praemium, -ī, n. *reward*, 7.

praesidium, -ī, n. *guard, protection, garrison*, 11.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, —, w. dat. *to excel*, 66.

praesum, -esse, -fuī (prae + sum), w. dat. *to be over, in command of*, 55.

praeter, prep. w. acc. *besides, except, beyond*, 57.

praetereā, adv. *besides, moreover* (praeter), 64.

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *to press, attack, oppress*, 48.

prīdiē, adv. *on the day before*, 58.

prīmō, adv. *at first* (prīmus), 62.

prīmum, adv. *first* (prīmus), 61.

prīmus, -a, -um (superl. of prior), *first*, 19, 29.

prīnceps, prīncipis, m. *chief, leader*, 19.

prior, prius, compar. adj., positive wanting, *former*, 29.

priusquam (prius + quam), conj. *before*, 62.

prīvō, -āre, *to deprive*, 31.

prō, prep. w. abl. *for, in behalf of, in the place of*, 20.

prō-, adverbial prefix, *forward, before*.

probō, -āre, *to approve*, 42.

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (prō + cēdō), *to go forward, advance*, 62.

procul, adv. *far, far off*, 64.

prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (prō + dūcō), *to lead forward*, 67.

proelium, -ī, n. *battle*, 12.

profectiō, -ōnis, f. *departure, setting out* (proficīscor), 62.

proficīscor, -ī, profectus, dep. v. to set out, depart, 49.

prōgredior, -ī, -gressus, dep. v. to go forward, advance, 57.

prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus (pro + habeō), to prevent, keep from, 43.

prope, adv. and prep. w. acc. near, 61.

properō, -āre, to hurry, hasten, 17.

propinquus, -a, -um, near, neighboring, 66.

propior, -ius, compar. adj., positive wanting, nearer (prope), 29.

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (prō + pōnō), to set forth, tell, offer, 69.

propter, prep. w. acc. on account of, 64.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī (prō + sum), to be useful, be of advantage to, to profit (conj. § 563), 55.

prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus (prō + videō), to provide, 35.

prōvincia, -ae, f. province, 33.

proximus, -a, -um (superl. of propior), nearest, next, 12, 29.

puella, -ae, f. girl (puer), 1.

puer, puerī, m. boy, 7.

pūgna, -ae, f. battle, 28.

pūgnō, -āre, to fight (pūgna), 10.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj. beautiful, pretty, 2 ff., 8.

putō, -āre, to think, suppose, 57.

Pyrrhus, -ī, m. Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, 47.

Q

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, to ask, inquire, seek for, 56.

quam, conj. than, 30.

quamquam, conj. although, 43.

quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj. how great? as great as, as, 46.

quārē, interrog. and rel. adv. (quā + rē), why, wherefore, 57.

quārtus, -a, -um, adj. fourth (quattuor), 44.

quattuor, indecl. adj. four, 58.

-que, enclitic conj. and, 31.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron. who, which, what, that (decl. § 547), 16.

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron. and adj. whoever, whichever, whatever (decl. § 549 a), 63.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, indef. pron. and adj. a certain, one, a (decl. § 549), 49.

quidem, adv. indeed, in fact; nē . . . quidem, not even, 41.

quiēs, -ētis, f. rest, sleep, 20.

quīn, conj. but that, from, without (used chiefly after negative expressions of doubting and hindering, § 344), 47.

quīnque, indecl. adj. five, 59.

quis (quī), (quae), quid (quod), interrog. pron. and adj. who? what? which? (decl. § 548), 17.

quis (quī), (quae, qua), quid
(quod), indef. pron. and adj.
used after nē, sī, nisi, *some
one, any one, any*, 67.

quisquam, —, quidquam (quod-
quam), indef. pron. *any one,
anything* (used chiefly in sen-
tences in which a negative is
expressed or implied; decl.
§ 549 a), 67.

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quod-
que), indef. pron. and adj.
each, every (decl. § 549 a),
57.

quisquis, —, quidquid, indef.
pron. *whoever, whatever* (decl.
§ 549 a), 54.

quō, interrog. and rel. adv.
*whither? to what place? into
which place, where*, 18.

quō, conj. *in order that* (used to
introduce a purpose clause
which contains a comparative),
44.

quod, conj. *because*, 38.

quōmodō, conj. and adv. (quō +
modō), *how? in what way?*
57.

quondam, adv. *once, formerly*,
52.

quoniam, conj. (cum + iam), *in-
asmuch as, because*, 66.

quoque, conj. *also, too*, following
the word to which it belongs,
53.

R

ratiō, -ōnis, f. *reason, plan,
method*, 51.

re-, red-, adverbial prefix, *back,
again.*

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (re
+ capiō), *to take back, recover;*
sē recipere, *to retreat*, 65.

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (re + eō),
to go back, retire, return, 61.

redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (re
+ dūcō), *to bring back, lead
back*, 67.

referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus
(re + ferō), *to carry back, re-
port;* pedem referre, *to re-
treat*, 63.

rēgīna -ae, f. *queen* (rēx), 2.

regiō, -ōnis, f. *region, district,
direction*, 34.

rēgnō, -āre, *to reign* (regnum),
73.

rēgnum, -ī, n. *kingdom* (rēgnō),
57.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus (conj.
§ 554), *to rule* (rēx), 37.

Rēgulus, -ī, m. *Regulus*, a famous
Roman, 38.

relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus,
to leave, abandon, 49.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. *remaining,
left;* reliquum est, *it remains*,
18, 59.

renūntiō, -āre (re + nūntiō), *to
take back word, report*, 42.

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus,
to find out, find, learn, 65.

rēs, reī, f. *matter, affair, busi-
ness, thing;* rēs mīlitāris, *the
art of war, military science;*
rēs pūblica, *the state, common-
wealth*, 32, 42.

respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus,
to answer, reply, 57.

revertor, revertī, reversus, dep. v. *to return;* in the perfect system the active forms revertī, reverteram, etc., are used, 59.

revocō, -āre (re + vocō), *to call back, recall,* 32.

rēx, rēgis, m. *king* (regō), 19.

Rhēnus, -ī, m. *the Rhine,* 36.

rīpa, -ae, f. *bank,* 23.

rogō, -āre, *to ask, ask for, request,* 28.

Rōma, -ae, f. *Rome;* Rōmam, *to Rome,* 10.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. *Roman* (Rōma); as a subst. *a Roman,* 6.

Rōmulus, -ī, m. *Romulus,* the founder of Rome, 10.

rosa, -ae, f. *rose,* 1.

rūrsus, adv. *back, again,* 63.

S

sacer, sacra, sacrum, adj. *sacred, holy,* 8.

saepe, adv. *often,* 38.

Saguntum, ī, n. *Saguntum,* a city in Spain, 51.

saltō, -āre, *to dance,* 72 s.

salūs, -ūtis, f. *safety,* 20.

sapiēns, -ntis, adj. *wise,* 52.

satis, adv. *enough,* 64.

sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to know* (*a fact;* compare cōgnōscō), 57.

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *to write,* 37.

secundus, -a, -um, adj. *second, favorable* (sequor), 44.

sed, conj. *but,* 2.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, *to sit,* 69 s.

semper, adv. *always,* 7.

senātus, -ūs, m. *senate* (senex), 47.

senex, senis, m. *old man,* 69 s.

sententia, -ae, f. *opinion, view, purpose* (sentiō), 63.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to feel, perceive, think,* 39.

septem, indecl. adj. *seven,* 25.

septimus, -a, -um, adj. *seventh* (septem), 25.

sequor, -ī, secūtus, dep. v. *to follow,* 49.

servitūs, -ūtis, f. *slavery, servitude* (servus), 20.

servō, -āre, *to save, preserve,* 5.

servus, -ī, m. *slave,* 4.

sex, indecl. adj. *six,* 65.

sī, conj. *if,* 31.

sīc, adv. *so,* 45.

sīgnum, -ī, n. *sign, signal, standard;* sīgna movēre, *to advance,* 22.

silentium, -ī, n. *silence,* 67.

silva, -ae, f. *wood, forest,* 2.

similis, -e, adj. w. gen. or dat. *like, similar to,* 28.

simul, adv. *at the same time;* simul ac (atque), *at the same time as, as soon as,* 62.

sine, prep. w. abl. *without,* 12.

singulī, -ae, -a, plur. adj. *one by one, singly,* 68.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj. *left, on the left hand,* 32.

Sinon, -ōnis, m. *Sinon*, 68 *s.*

socius, -ī, m. *ally*, 18.

soleō, -ēre, solitus, semi-dep. v. *to be accustomed, be wont*, 50.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj. *alone, only* (decl. § 539), 47.

Spartacus, -ī, m. *Spartacus*, a German chief, 71 *s.*

spērō, -āre, *to hope* (spēs), 56.

spēs, speī, f. *hope*, 32.

spoliō, -āre, *to strip, despoil*, 31.

statim, adv. *at once, immediately*, 48.

studeō, -ēre, studuī, —, with dat. *to be eager for, desire* (studium), 56.

studium, -ī, n. *eagerness, devotion, zeal*, 26.

sub, adverbial prefix and prep. w. acc. and abl. *under, to the foot of, at the foot of*, 62.

subitō, adv. *suddenly*, 33.

subsidium, -ī, n. *reserve, support, reënforcement*, 68.

succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (sub + cēdō), *to come up, take the place of*, 67.

suī, sibi, sē (sēsē), sē, reflexive pron. *himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it*, 41.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *to be* (conj. § 561), 1 ff.

summus, -a, -um (superl. of superus), *highest, the top of*, 18, 29.

superior, -ius, adj. (comp. of superus), *upper, higher*, 29.

superō, -āre, *to surpass, overcome*, 14.

superus, -a, -um, adj. *high, above* (superō), 29.

suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc. *above, beyond*, 67.

sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (sub + teneō), *support, hold out against, withstand*, 34.

sustulī, perf. indic. of tollō.

suus, -a, -um, refl. poss. adj. *his own, her own, its own* (suī), 15.

T

tam, adv. *so*, used w. adj. and adv. 45.

tamen, adv. *nevertheless, yet, still*, 43.

tandem, adv. *at last, pray!* 59.

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *to touch*, 54.

tantus, -a, -um, adj. *so great*, 45.

Tarentīnī, -ōrum, m. plur. *Tarentines*, people of Tarentum, in southern Italy, 47.

tēlum, -ī, n. *weapon, spear*, 42.

tempestās, -ātis, f. *weather, storm* (tempus).

templum, -ī, n. *temple*, 12.

tempus, -oris, n. *time*, 25.

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, *to hold*, 34.

tener, -era, -erum, adj. *tender, young*, 8.

tergum, -ī, n. *back*; tergum dare, *to flee*; ā tergō, *from the rear*, 51.

terra, -ae, f. *earth, land*, 12.

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, *to frighten*, 35.

18

tertius, -a, -um, adj. *third* (trēs), 25.

Themistoclēs, -is, m. *Themistocles*, a famous Athenian general and statesman, 67 *s*.

Thermopylae, -ārum, f. plur. *Thermopylae*, a narrow pass between Thessaly and Greece, 65 *s*.

tībia, -ae, f. *pipe*, 72 *s*.

timeō, -ēre, timuī, —, *to be afraid, fear*, 34.

timidus, -a, -um, adj. *timid, frightened* (timeō), 27.

timor, -ōris, m. *fear* (timeō), 21.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *to lift up, take away, destroy*, 64.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj. *whole, entire* (decl. § 539), 62.

trā- = trāns-.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (trāns + dō), *to hand over, yield up, surrender*, 64.

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (trāns + dūcō), *to lead over, lead across*, 38.

tranquillus, -a, -um, adj. *calm*, 68 *s*.

trāns, adverbial prefix and prep. w. acc. *over, across*, 25.

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (trāns + eō), *to go over, cross*, 61.

trēs, tria, adj. *three*, 55.

tribūnus, -ī, m. *tribune*, a military officer; there were six with each legion, 32.

trīstis, -e, adj. *sad*, 27.

tū, tuī, pers. pron. *thou, you* (decl. § 545), 41.

tueor, -ērī, tūtus, *to watch*, 48.

Tullia, -ae, f. *Tullia*, 1.

tum, adv. *then*, 61.

turris, -is (acc. -im), f. *tower*, 22.

tūtō, adv. *safely* (tūtus), 33.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj. *safe*, 27.

tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj. *thy, your* (tū), 3.

U

ubi, rel. and interrog. adv. *where; when;* ubī prīmum, *as soon as*, 5, 37, 62.

ūllus, -a, -um, adj. *any* (decl. § 539), 56.

ulterior, -ius, comparative adj., positive wanting, *farther, beyond* (ultrā), 29.

ultimus, -a, -um, superl. of ulterior, *farthest, most remote*, 19, 29.

ultrā, adv. and prep. w. acc. *beyond, on the farther side*, 67.

umbra, -ae, f. *shade*, 64 *s*.

umerus, -ī, m. *shoulder*, 71 *s*.

umquam, adv. *ever*, used with negatives, 49.

ūnā, adv. *together, in company with*, 56.

unde, rel. adv. *whence, from which*, 18.

undique, adv. *from every side* (unde), 65.

ūnus, -a, -um, adj. *one, sole, alone* (decl. § 539), 52.

urbs, urbis, f. *city*, 23.

ūsus, -ūs, m. *use, experience, profit* (ūtor), 69.

ut (utī), conj. *that, in order that, so that, as;* after expressions of fear, *that not*, 30, 44, 70.

uter, utra, utrum, interrog. and rel. pron. and adj. *which (of two)?* (decl. § 539), 51.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, pron. and adj. *each (of two), both* (uter), 52.

utī = ut.

utinam, adv. used to introduce wishes, *would that*, 43.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, dep. v. *to use, enjoy, profit by;* used with the abl. 49.

utrum . . . an, interrog. conj. *whether . . . or*, 58.

uxor, -ōris, f. *wife*, 70 s.

V

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. *empty of, free from, without*, 31.

validus, -a, -um, adj. *strong*, 7.

vāstō, -āre, *to destroy, devastate*, 14.

vehementer, adv. *violently, impetuously*, 48.

vel, conj. *or;* vel . . . vel, *either . . . or (as you please)*, 64.

vēlōciter, adv. *swiftly* (vēlōx), 45.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj. *swift, fleet*, 26.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus, *to come*, 39.

vēr, vēris, n. *spring;* prīmō vēre, *at the beginning of spring*, 25.

verbum, -ī, n. *word*, 52.

vereor, -ērī, veritus, dep. v. *to fear, dread*, 48.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. *your* (vōs), 18.

vestis, -is, f. *garment, dress*, 73 s.

via, -ae, f. *road, way*, 1.

victor, -ōris, m. *victor* (vincō), 21.

victōria, -ae, f. *victory* (vincō), 13.

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *to see;* pass. *to seem*, 34.

vigilia, -ae, f. *watch, guard*, 25.

vīgintī, indecl. adj. *twenty*, 59.

vīlicus, -ī, m. *steward*, 4.

vīlla, -ae, f. *country house*, 4.

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *to conquer*, 37.

vir, virī, m. *man*, 7.

virtūs, -ūtis, f. *manliness, courage, virtue* (vir), 20.

vīta, -ae, f. *life*, 3.

vix, adv. *hardly, scarcely*, 45.

vocō, -āre, *to call* (vōx), 8.

volō, velle, voluī, *to wish, want to* (conj. § 564), 59.

voluntās, -ātis, f. *wish, will, consent* (volō), 60.

vōs, pers. pron. *we*, 41.

vōx, vōcis, f. *voice*, 20.

vulnerō, -āre, *to wound* (vulnus), 35.

vulnus, -eris, n. *wound*, 21.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

The principal parts of verbs and peculiarities of syntax must be learned from the preceding vocabulary and the body of the book. The numbers after verbs indicate the conjugation to which they belong.

A

a, art., usually not translated; sometimes quīdam, quaedam, quoddam.

able (to be), possum.

about, dē w. abl. ; circum w. acc.

above, adj. superus, -a, -um ; adv. and prep. w. acc. suprā.

abundance, cōpia, -ae, f.

accept, accipiō, 3.

acceptable, grātus, -a, -um.

accomplish, cōnficiō, 3 ; efficiō, 3.

accustomed (to be), soleō, 2, semi-dep. ; **to grow accustomed**, cōnsuēscō, 3.

acquainted with (to become), cōgnōscō, 3.

across, trāns w. acc.

act (to), agō, 3 ; faciō, 3.

advance (to), sīgna movēre ; prōgredior, 3 ; prōcēdō, 3.

advantage (to be of), prōsum.

advice, cōnsilium, -ī, n.

advise (to), moneō, 2.

affair, rēs, reī, f.

afraid (to be), timeō, 2 ; vereor, 2.

Africa, Āfrica, -ae, f.

after, prep. post w. acc. ; conj. postquam, ubi, cum ; sometimes abl. abs. ; adv. post, posteā.

afterwards, posteā, deinde, post.

again, iterum, rūrsus.

against, contrā w. acc.

age, aetās, -ātis, f.

aid, auxilium, -ī, n.

aid (to), iuvō, 1 ; adiuvō, 1.

all, omnis, -e ; tōtus, -a, -um ; **all other**, cēterī, -ae, -a ; **all sides (on)**, undique.

allow (to), permittō, 3 ; concēdō, 3 ; patior, 3 ; licet, used impersonally, 2.

ally, socius, -ī, m.

almost, ferē, paene.

alone, sōlus, -a, -um.

already, iam.

also, quoque (after the word), etiam.

although, cum w. subj. ; quamquam w. indic. ; etsī.

always, semper.

ambassador lēgātus, -ī, m.

among, inter w. acc. ; apud w. acc.

ancient, antīquus, -a, -um.

and, et, atque, -que ; and not, neque.

animal, animal, -ālis, n.

announce (to), nūntiō, 1.

another, alius, -a, -ud.

any, ūllus, -a, -um ; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (aliquod) ; quisquam, —, quidquam (in neg. clauses) ; quis, quae, quid (after sī, nisi, nē).

approach, aditus, -ūs, m. ; adventus, -ūs, m.

approach (to), adpropinquō (w. dat.), 1 ; adeō ; accēdō, 3.

approve (to), approve of, probō, 1.

arm (to), armō, 1.

army, exercitus, -ūs, m. ; army on the march, agmen, -inis, n.

around, prep. circum w. acc.

arouse (to), incitō, 1 ; excitō, 1.

arrange (to), īnstruō, 3.

arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.

arrive (to), perveniō, 4 (w. ad or in and acc.).

as, ut, appositive ; as much as, quantus, -a, -um ; as long as, dum ; as soon as, cum prīmum, ubi prīmum, simulatque.

ask (to), ask for, rogō, 1 (w. two accs.) ; petō, 3 ; quaerō, 3 ; postulō, 1.

assault (to), adorior, 4.

assemble (to), trans. convocō, 1; intrans. conveniō, 4.

assembly, concilium, -ī, n.

assist (to), iuvō, 1 ; adiuvō, 1.

assistance, auxilium, -ī, n. ; opera, -ae, f.

at first, prīmō.

at hand (to be), adsum.

at last, iam, tandem.

at once, statim.

attack, impetus, -ūs, m. ; oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f.

attack (to), oppūgnō, 1 ; adorior, 4.

attempt (to), cōnor, 1.

authority, auctōritās, -ātis, f.

auxiliary troops, auxilia, -ōrum, n. plur.

await (to), exspectō, 1.

away (to be), absum.

B

back, tergum, -ī, n.

bad, malus, -a, -um.

badly, male.

baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, n. plur.

band, manus, -ūs, f.

bank (of a stream), rīpa, -ae, f.

battle, pūgna, -ae, f. ; proelium, -ī, n.

be (to), sum ; to be over, praesum ; to be made, fīō ; to be wont, accustomed, soleō, 2 ; cōnsuēvī, 3.

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

because, quod, cum; **because of**, propter w. acc.; ob w. acc.; ablative.

become (to), fīō; **become accustomed**, cōnsuēscō, 3.

before, conj. antequam, priusquam; prep. ante w. acc.; adv. anteā.

beg (to), rogō, 1; petō, 3, w. prep. and abl.; ōrō, 1.

begin (to), incipiō, 3; coepī; ineō.

behalf of (in), prō w. abl.

behind, post w. acc.

Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, m. plur.

belief, opīniō, -ōnis, f.

believe (to), putō, 1.

belong (to), sum w. dat. of possessor; genitive.

below, prep. sub w. abl.; īnfrā w. acc.; adv. īnfrā; adj. īnferus, -a, -um.

beseech (to), ōrō, 1.

besides, adv. praetereā; prep. praeter w. acc.

besiege (to), oppūgnō, 1; obsideō, 2.

best, optimus, -a, -um.

between, inter w. acc.

beyond, extrā; ultrā.

black, niger, -gra, -grum.

blockade (to), obsideō, 2.

body, corpus, -oris, n.

bold, audāx, -cis.

boldly, audācter.

boldness, audācia, -ae, f.

book, liber, -brī, m.

both, uterque, utraque, utrumque.

both . . . and, et . . . et.

booty, praeda, -ae, f.

bottom of, īnfimus, -a, -um.

boy, puer, puerī, m.

brave, fortis, -e.

bravely, fortiter.

bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, f.

break camp (to), castra movēre.

bridge, pōns, pontis, m.

bring (to), portō, 1; **bring up**, addūcō, 3; adferō; **bring together**, cōgō, 3; cōnferō; **bring upon**, īnferō.

Britons, Britannī, -ōrum, m. plur.

broad, lātus, -a, -um.

brother, frāter, -tris, m.

boundaries, fīnēs, fīnium, m.

build (to), aedificō, 1.

building, aedificium, -ī, n.

burn (to), incendō, 3.

but, sed.

by, ā, ab w. abl.

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, m.

call (to), appellō, 1; vocō, 1; **call upon**, vocō, 1; **call together**, convocō, 1; **call back**, revocō, 1.

camp, castra, -ōrum, n. plur.; **to pitch camp**, castra pōnere.

can, be able, possum.

captive, captīvus, -ī, m.

capture (to), expūgnō, 1; capiō, 3.

care, cūra, -ae, f.

care for (to), cūrō, 1, w. acc. ;
consulō, 3, w. dat.

carefulness, dīligentia, -ae, f.

carry (to), portō, 1 ; carry on,
administrō, 1 ; carry on war,
bellum gerere ; carry to, dē-
ferō ; carry back, referō.

Carthaginian, Carthāginiēnsis, -e.

cause, causa, -ae, f.

cavalry, equitēs, -tum, m. plur. ;
equitātus, -ūs, m. ; adj. eques-
ter, -tris, -tre.

cease from (to), dēsistō, 3, w.
abl.

centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, m.

certain, certus, -a, -um ; a cer-
tain, quīdam, quaedam, quod-
dam.

chance, potestās, -ātis, f.

change (to), mūtō, 1.

charge of (to be in), praesum w.
dat. ; put in charge of, prae-
ficiō, 3, w. dat.

chase away (to), fugō, 1.

chief, prīnceps, -cipis, m.

children, līberī, -ōrum, m. plur. ;
puerī, -ōrum, m. plur.

Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, m.

citadel, arx, arcis, f.

citizen, cīvis, -is, m. or f.

citizenship, cīvitās, -ātis, f.

city, urbs, urbis, f.

clan, gēns, gentis, f.

client, cliēns, -ntis, m.

close (to), claudō, 3.

cohort, cohors, -rtis, f.

column, agmen, -inis, n.

come (to), veniō, 4 ; come near,
adpropinquō, 1 ; come up,
succēdō, 3 ; come together,
conveniō, 4.

command (to), imperō, 1, w.
dat. ; iubeō, 2.

command, imperium, -ī, n.

common, commūnis, -e.

commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī
pūblicae, f.

companion, comes, -itis, m. or f.

compel (to), cōgō, 3.

conceal (to), occultō, 1.

concern (to), pertineō, 2, w. ad.
and acc.

concerning, dē w. abl.

condition, condiciō, -ōnis, f.

conference, concilium, -ī, n.

confidence, fidēs, fideī, f.

confident (to be), cōnfīdō, 3,
semi-dep.

conquer (to), vincō, 3 ; superō, 1.

consecutive, continuus, -a, -um.

consider (to), cōgitō, 1 ; exīs-
timō, 1 ; habeō, 2.

consort, coniūnx, coniugis, f. or
m.

conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f.

conspire (to), coniūrō, 1.

consul, consul, -is, m.

consult (to), cōnsulō, 3, w. acc.

contend in battle (to), dīmicō, 1.

council, concilium, -ī, n.

country, fīnēs, -ium, m. plur. ;
terra, -ae, f. ; native country,
patria, -ae, f. ; country house,
vīlla, -ae, f.

courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.; ani-
mus, -ī, m.; audācia, -ae, f.;
fortitūdō, -inis, f.
cover (to), compleō, 2.
covered, opertus, -a, -um.
cross (to), trānseō.
crowd, multitūdō, -inis, f.
cruel, atrōx, -cis.
crush (to), opprimō, 3.
custom, cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f.;
mōs, mōris, m.
cut down (to), caedō, 3; occīdō, 3.
cut off (to), interclūdō, 3.

D

daily, adj. cotīdiānus, -a, -um;
adv. cotīdiē.
danger, perīculum, -ī, n.
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.
dare (to), audeō, 2, semi-dep.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, f.
dawn (at), prīmā lūce.
day, diēs, diēī, m.; day before,
prīdiē; day after, postrīdiē.
daybreak (at), prīmā lūce.
daylight, lūx, lūcis, f.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, f.
decide (to), cōnstituō, 3.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defeat (to), superō, 1; vincō, 3.
defend (to), dēfendō, 3.
defender, dēfēnsor, -ōris, m.
defense, praesidium, -ī, n.
delay, mora, -ae, f.
delay (to), moror, 1.

demand (to), postulō, 1; poscō, 3.
depart (to), ēgredior, 3; discēdō,
3; proficīscor, 3.
departure, profectiō, -ōnis, f.;
discessus, -ūs, m.
deprive (to), prīvō, 1.
design, consilium, -ī, n.
desire, studium, -ī, n.
desire (to), cupiō, 3; volō.
desirous, avidus, -a, -um.
desist from (to), dēsistō, 3, w
abl.; intermittō, 3.
despair (to), dēspērō, 1.
despoil of (to), spoliō, 1, w. abl.
destroy (to), tollō, 3.
deter (to), dēterreō, 2.
determine (to), cōnstituō, 3.
devastate (to), vāstō, 3.
die (to), morior, 3.
differ (to), differō.
different, dissimilis, -e.
difficult, difficilis, -e; dūrus, -a,
-um.
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, f.;
with difficulty, vix.
diligence, industria, -ae, f.; dīli-
gentia, -ae, f.
distant, longinquus, -a, -um.
distant (to be), absum.
district, ager, agrī, m.; regiō,
-ōnis, f.
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.; dig a ditch,
fossam dūcere.
divide (to), dīvidō, 3.
do (to), agō, 3; faciō, 3; per-
ficiō, 3.

door, porta, -ae, f.

doubt (to), dubitō, 1.

doubtful, dubius, -a, -um ; there is no doubt, nōn est dubium.

draw near, accēdō, 3.

draw up (to), īnstruō, 3 ; cōnstituō, 3.

drive (to), agō, 3 ; pellō, 3 ; drive away, fugō, 1 ; drive out, expellō, 3.

during, acc. or abl. of time ; in w. abl. ; per w. acc.

dwell (to), incolō, 3 ; habitō, 1.

E

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) ; each of two, uterque, utraque, utrumque.

eager, avidus, -a, -um ; ācer, ācris, ācre.

eagerly, ācriter ; avidē.

eager for (to be), studeō, 2, w. dat. ; cupiō, 3.

early (in the morning), māne.

earnestly, māgnopere.

easily, facile.

easy, facilis, -e.

either . . . or, aut . . . aut ; vel . . . vel.

embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, f.

employ (to), ūtor, 3, w. abl.

end, fīnis, -is, m.

endure (to), patior, 3 ; ferō.

enemy, hostis, -is, m. ; private enemy, inimīcus, -ī, m.

engage in battle (to), proelium committere.

enjoy (to), fruor, 3, w. abl.

enlarge (to), augeō, 2.

enormous, ingēns, -tis.

enough, satis.

enter upon (to), ineō, incipiō, 3.

entire, tōtus, -a, -um.

envoy, lēgātus, -ī, m.

equal, aequus, -a, -um ; similis, -e.

equestrian, equester, -tris, -tre.

equip (to), īnstituō, 3.

establish (to), cōnfīrmō, 1 ; īnstituō, 3.

even, etiam.

even if, etsī.

ever, umquam.

every, omnis, -e ; every one, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque).

exceedingly, vehementer.

excel (to), praestō, 1.

except, praeter w. acc.

exhausted, dēfessus, -a, -um ; cōnfectus, -a, -um.

exhort, hortor, 1.

expect, exspectō, 1.

expectation, opīniō, -ōnis, f.

expel, expellō, 3.

experience (to), patior, 3.

experience, ūsus, -ūs, m.

F

Fabius, Fabius, -ī, m.

fact, rēs, reī, f. ; often the neuter of an adj. or pron.

fail (to), dēsum, w. dat.

faith, fidēs, -eī, f.

fall (to), cadō, 3 ; fall back, cēdō, 3.

fame, fāma, -ae, f.

family, gēns, -tis, f.

famous, clārus, -a, -um ; ille after the noun.

far, far off, longē ; procul.

farm, vīlla, -ae, f.

farmer, agricola, -ae, m.

farther, adj. ulterior, -ius ; adv. ultrā ; farthest, ultimus, -a, -um.

father, pater, -tris, m.

fatherland, patria, -ae, f.

favor, grātia, -ae, f. ; beneficium, -ī, n.

fear, timor, -ōris, m.

fear (to), timeō, 2 ; vereor, 2.

feeble, aeger, -gra, -grum.

feel (to), sentiō, 4 ; feel grateful, grātiam habēre.

few, paucī, -ae, -a ; nōnnūllī, -ae, -a.

fidelity, fidēs, -eī, f.

field, ager, agrī, m. ; campus, -ī, m.

fiercely, ācriter ; atrōciter.

fight, pūgnō, 1 ; dīmicō, 1.

fill (to), compleō, 2.

finally, dēnique.

find (to), reperiō, 4 ; nancīscor, 3.

find out (to), cōgnōscō, 3 ; reperiō, 4.

fine, bonus, -a, -um ; pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

finish (to), cōnficiō, 3.

fire, īgnis, -is, m.

first, adj. prīmus, -a, -um ; first, adv. prīmum ; at first, prīmō.

fit, idōneus, -a, -um.

five, indecl. quīnque.

fixed, certus, -a, -um.

flank, latus, -eris, n. ; cornū, -ūs, n.

flee (to), fugiō, 3.

fleet, classis, -is, f.

fleet, adj. vēlōx, -cis.

flight, fuga, -ae, f.

follow (to), sequor, 3.

following, posterus, -a, -um ; proximus, -a, -um ; secundus, -a, -um ; hīc, haec, hōc.

food, cibus, -ī, m.

foot, pēs, pedis, m. ; foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, m. ; collect. peditātus, -ūs, m.

foot of, īnfimus, -a, -um.

for, conj. nam ; enim (does not stand first).

for, prep. prō w. abl. ; for the sake of, causā preceded by the genitive.

forced marches, māgna itinera.

forces, cōpiae, -ārum, f.

forest, silva, -ae, f.

forget (to), oblīvīscor, 3.

former (the), prior, prius ; ille, illa, illud.

fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, f.

fortify (to), mūniō, 4.

fortunately, fēlīciter.

fortune, fortūna, -ae, f

four, indecl. quattuor.

fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.

free (to), līberō, 1.

free, līber, -era, -erum ; free
    from, vacuus, -a, -um.

freedom, lībertās, -ātis, f.

frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum.

fresh, novus, -a, -um ; integer,
    -gra, -grum.

friend, amīcus, -ī, m.

friendship, amīcitia, -ae, f.

frighten (to), terreō, 2 ; frighten
    off, dēterreō, 2 ; frighten thor-
    oughly, perterreō, 2.

from, ā, ab ; dē ; ē, ex (all w.
    abl.).

from all sides, undique.

fruit, frūctus, -ūs, m.

G

garden, hortus, -ī, m.

garrison, praesidium, -ī, n.

gate, porta, -ae, f.

gather (to), intrans. conveniō, 4.

Gaul (the country), Gallia, -ae, f.

Gauls, Gallī, -ōrum, m. plur.

general, imperātor, -ōris, m. ;
    dux, ducis, m.

German, Germānus, -a, -um.

get possession of (to), potior, 4.

get ready (to), parō, 1 ; com-
    parō, 1.

get together (to), comparō, 1.

gift, dōnum, -ī, n.

girl, puella, -ae, f.

give (to), dō, 1.

give up (to), trādō, 3 ; dēdō, 3 ;
    intrans. dēsistō, 3.

glory, laus, laudis, f.

go (to), eō ; proficīscor, 3 ; go
    to meet, occurrō, 3 ; go out,
    ēgredior, 3 ; excēdō, 3 ; go
    in, ineō ; go on, prōgredior,
    3 ; go off, away, abeō.

god, deus, -ī, m.

gold, aurum, -ī, n.

good, bonus, -a, -um.

gradually, paulātim.

grain, frūmentum, -ī, n.

grant (to), dō, 1 ; concēdō, 3.

grass, herba, -ae, f.

grateful (to feel), grātiam ha-
    bēre.

gratitude, grātia, -ae, f.

great, māgnus, -a, -um ; clārus,
    -a, -um.

greatly, māgnopere ; vehementer.

Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.

grief, dolor, -ōris, m.

ground, terra, -ae, f.

guard, custōs, -ōdis, m.

guide, dux, ducis, m.

H

habit, mōs, mōris, m. ; cōnsuē-
    tūdō, -inis, f.

Haeduans, Haeduī, -ōrum, m.
    plur.

halt (to), cōnsistō, 3.

hand, manus, -ūs, f.

hand over (to), trādō, 3.
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, m.
happen (to), accidō, 3 ; fīō.
harbor, portus, -ūs, m.
hard, dūrus, -a, -um ; gravis, -e ; atrōx, -cis ; adv. graviter.
hardly, vix ; ferē.
harm, noceō, 2, w. dat.
hasten (to), properō, 1 ; contendō, 3.
hatred, odium, -ī, n.
have (to), habeō, 2 ; have thought for, cōnsulō, 3, w. dat.
he, is ; ille.
head, caput, -itis, n.
hear, audiō, 4.
heavy, gravis, -e.
height, altitūdō, -inis, f.
help, auxilium, -ī, n.
help (to), iuvō, 1 ; adiuvō, 1.
hence, hinc.
her, ēius ; refl. suus, -a, -um.
here, hīc.
herself, ipsa ; refl. suī, sibi, sē.
hide (to), occultō, 1 ; abdō, 3.
high, altus, -a, -um ; highest, summus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, m.
himself, ipse ; refl. suī, sibi, sē.
hinder (to), impediō, 4 ; prohibeō, 2.
hindrance, impedīmentum, -ī, n.
his, ēius ; refl. suus, -a, -um.
hither, adj. citerior, -ius ; adv. hūc.

hold (to), teneō, 2 ; habeō, 2 ; hold back, contineō, 2 ; hold (against opposition), obtineō, 2.
home, domus, -ūs, f. ; as limit of motion, domum.
honor, laus, laudis, f. ; honor, -ōris, m.
hope, spēs, speī, f.
hope (to), spērō, 1.
Horace, Horātius, -ī, m.
horn, cornū, -ūs, n.
horse, equus, -ī, m.
horseman, eques, -itis, m.
hostage, obses, -idis, m. or f.
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, domus, -ūs, m. ; aedificium, -ī, n.
how, quōmodō ; how much, how great, quantus, -a, -um.
huge, ingēns, -ntis.
human being, homō, -inis, m. or f.
hurry (to), properō, 1 ; contendō, 3.

I

I, ego.
if, sī ; if not, nisi.
immediately, statim.
in, in w. abl.
inasmuch as, quoniam.
increase (to), augeō, 2.
indicate (to), ostendō, 3.
induce (to), addūcō, 3.
industry, industria, -ae, f.
inexperienced, imperītus, -a, -um, w. gen.

infantry, peditātus, -ūs, m.; adj. pedester, -tris, -tre.

influence, auctōritās, -ātis, f.

inform (to), certiōrem facere.

inhabit (to), incolō, 3.

inhabitant, incola, -ae, m.; **inhabitant of a town,** oppidānus, -ī, m.

injure (to), noceō, 2, w. dat.

injury, iniūria, -ae, f.

inner, interior, -ius.

in order that, ut; quō (before comparatives).

interested in (to be), studeō, 2, w. dat.

interior, interior, -ius.

interrupt, intermittō, 3.

into, in w. acc.

it, id, but must agree w. antecedent in gender.

Italy, Ītalia, -ae, f.

its, ēius; refl. suus, -a, -um.

J

join together (to), coniungō, 3.

journey, iter, itineris, n.

judge, iūdex, -icis, m.

judge (to), iūdicō, 1; arbitror, 1.

K

keep (to), obtineō, 2.

keeper, custōs, -ōdis, m.

keep from (to), prohibeō, 2.

keep in check (to), contineō, 2.

kill (to), caedō, 3; interficiō, 3; occīdō, 3.

kindness, grātia, -ae, f.; beneficium, ī, n.

king, rēx, rēgis, m.

kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, n.

know (to), sciō, 4; cōgnōvī, 3; intellegō, 3.

L

labor, labor, -ōris, m.

lack, inopia, -ae, f.

lacking (to be), dēsum.

land, terra, -ae, f.; ager, agrī, m.; **native land,** patria, -ae, f.

large, māgnus, -a, -um.

later, post, postea.

latter, hīc, haec, hōc.

law, iūs, iūris, n.

lay waste (to), vāstō, 1.

lead (to), dūcō, 3; **lead across,** trādūcō, 3; **lead forward,** prōdūcō, 3; **lead out,** ēdūcō, 3; **lead away,** dēdūcō, 3.

leader, dux, ducis, m.; prīnceps, -ipis, m.

leading man, prīnceps, -ipis, m.

learn (to), audiō, 4; cōgnōscō, 3; certior fierī; reperiō, 4.

least, minimus, -a, -um.

leave (to), relinquō, 3.

left, reliquus, -a, -um; **on the left hand,** sinister, -tra, -trum.

legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.

less, adj. minor, minus; adv. minus.

letter, epistula, -ae, f.; litterae, -ārum, f. plur.

liberate (to), līberō, 1.

liberty, lībertās, -ātis, f.

lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, m.

life, vīta, -ae, f.

lift up (to), tollō, 3.

light, noun, lūx, lūcis, f.

light, adj. levis, -e.

like, similis, -e.

like (to), amō, 1.

likewise, item.

line-of-battle, aciēs, -ēī, f.

little, parvus, -a, -um ; a little, paulum ; before comparatives, paulō.

live (to), habitō, 1 ; incolō, 3.

living creature, animal, -ālis, n.

long, adj. longus, -a, -um.

long, for a long time, adv. diū.

look for (to), exspectō, 1.

look out for one's interests (to), cōnsulō, 3, w. dat.

lose (to), āmittō, 3.

loud, māgnus, -a, -um.

love, amor, -ōris, m.

love (to), amō, 1.

low, humilis, -e.

M

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, m.

majority of (the), plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque.

make (to), faciō, 3 ; efficiō, 3 ; make an effort, cōnor, 1 ; make peace, pācem cōnfīrmāre ; make war, bellum īnferre ; make for, petō, 3 ; make firm, cōnfīrmō, 1 ; make use of, ūtor, 3.

man, vir, virī, m. ; homō, -inis, m.

manage (to), administrō, 1 ; agō, 3 ; gerō, 3.

manliness, virtūs, -ūtis, f.

manner, modus, -ī, m. ; ratiō, -ōnis, f. ; in what manner, quō modō ; in this manner, ita, sīc.

many, multī, -ae, -a ; plērīque, -aeque, -aque.

march, iter, itineris, n.

march (to), iter facere.

Marcus, Marcus, -ī, m.

maritime, maritimus, -a, -um.

master, dominus, -ī, m. ; magister, -trī, m.

may, licet (impers. verb).

meanwhile, intereā.

meet (to go to), occurrō, 3.

meeting, concilium, -ī, n.

memory, memoria, -ae, f.

merchant, mercātor, -ōris, m.

messenger, nūntius, -ī, m.

method, ratiō, -ōnis, f.

middle of (the), medius, -a, -um.

mile, mīlle passūs ; miles, mīlia passuum.

military, mīlitāris, -e.

mind, animus, -ī, m.

money, pecūnia, -ae, f. ; argentum, -ī, n.

more, adv. magis ; adj. plūs.

moreover, praetereā.

morning (in the), māne.

mother, māter, -tris, f.

mount (to), impōnō, 3.

mountain, mōns, -ntis, m.

move (to), moveō, 2.

much, adj. multus, -a, -um ; adv. multum ; multō (before comparatives).

multitude, multitūdō, -inis, f.

muse, Mūsa, -ae, f.

must, dēbeō, 2 ; gerundive w. dat. of agent.

my, mine, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, n.

name (to), appellō, 1.

nation, nātiō, -ōnis, f.

nature, nātūra, -ae, f.

near, prope w. acc.; adj. propinquus, -a, -um ; nearer, propior, -ius ; nearest, proximus, -a, -um.

nearly, ferē ; paene ; prope.

necessary, necessārius, -a, -um.

needful, necessārius, -a, -um.

neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um ; propinquus, -a, -um.

neighbors, fīnitimī, -ōrum, m. plur.

neither, neuter, -tra, -trum.

neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.

Nervians, Nerviī, -ōrum, m. plur.

never, numquam.

nevertheless, tamen.

new, novus, -a, -um.

news (to send), nūntiō, 1.

next, proximus, -a, -um ; posterus, -a, -um.

night, nox, noctis, f.; at night, adv. noctū ; adj. nocturnus, -a, -um.

nine, indecl. novem.

no, nūllus, -a, -um ; no one, nūllus ; nēmō, -inis, m.

noise, clāmor, -ōris, m.

nor, neque (nec).

not, nōn ; nē (w. certain subjunctives); and not, neque; not only . . . but also, nōn modo . . . sed etiam ; not yet, nōndum ; not even, nē . . . quidem ; not any, nūllus, -a, -um ; not (in questions expecting the answer " yes "), nōnne.

nothing, indecl. nihil.

notice, sentiō, 4 ; animadvertō, 3.

now, nunc ; iam.

number, numerus, -ī, m.

O

obey, pāreō, 2, w. dat.

obliged (to be), often expressed by the pass. periphras. conjugation.

obtain (to), nancīscor, 3 ; obtain one's request, impetrō, 1.

ocean, ōceanus, -ī, m.

offer, offerō, 3 ; prōpōnō, 3.

often, saepe.

old, antīquus, -a, -um.

on, in w. abl.; on account of, abl.; ob w. acc.; propter w. acc.

once, quondam ; at once, statim ; once more, iterum ; rūrsus.

one, ūnus, -a, -um.

onset, impetus, -ūs, m.

openly, palam.

opinion, sententia, -ae, f.

opportunity, facultās, -ātis, f. ; potestās, -ātis, f.

oppose (to), occurrō, 3, w. dat.

oppress (to), premō, 3 ; opprimō, 3.

or, aut ; vel.

order (to), imperō, 1, w. dat. ; iubeō, 2 ; order to furnish, imperō w. dat. of person and acc. of thing.

other, alius, alia, aliud ; other of two, alter, -tera, -terum.

others (the), cēterī, -ae, -a ; reliquī, -ae, -a.

ought, oportet (impers. verb) ; dēbeō, 2.

our, noster, -tra, -trum.

out of, ē, ex w. abl.

outside of, extrā w. acc.

outward, exterus, -a, -um.

overcome (to), superō, 1 ; vincō, 3.

overpower (to), opprimō, 3.

overtake (to), cōnsequor, 3.

owe (to), dēbeō, 2.

owing to, abl. of cause ; ob w. acc. ; propter w. acc.

own (one's), suus, -a, -um.

owner, dominus, -ī, m.

P

pace, passus, -ūs, m.

pacify (to), pācō, 1.

pain, dolor, -ōris, m.

part, pars, partis, f. ; for the most part, plērumque.

19

pass (to let), intermittō, 3 ; pass (time), agō, 3.

pass the winter (to), hiemō, 1.

patriotism, amor patriae.

peace, pāx, pācis, f.

people, populus, -ī, m.

perceive, sentiō, 4.

perform, cōnficiō, 3.

permit, permittō, 3 ; it is permitted, licet (impers. verb).

persuade (to), persuādeō, 2, w. dat.

pitch camp (to), castra pōnere.

place, locus, -ī, m. ; places, loca, -ōrum, n. plur. ; to this place, hūc ; to that place, illūc, eō ; to which place, quō.

place (to), conlocō, 1 ; pōnō, 3.

place in command of (to), praeficiō, 3, w. dat.

plain, campus, -ī, m.

plan, cōnsilium, -ī, n.

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.

plenty, cōpia, -ae, f.

plot (to), coniūrō, 1.

plunder, praeda, -ae, f.

poet, poēta, -ae, m.

possession of (to get), potior, 4, w. abl. ; occupō, 1.

power, imperium, -ī, n. ; potestās, -ātis, f.

praise, laus, laudis, f.

praise (to), laudō, 1.

prefer (to), mālō.

prepare (to), parō, 1 ; comparō, 1.

prepared, parātus, -a, -um.

present (to be), adsum.

present (to), dō, 1; offerō
press (to), premō, 3.
pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
prevent (to), prohibeō, 2; im-
pediō, 4.
previous, prior, prius.
previously, ante, anteā.
principal man, prīnceps, -ipis, m.
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, m.
proceed (to), prōgredior, 3.
profit, frūctus, -ūs, m.
prominent, īnsīgnis, -e.
promise (to), polliceor, 2.
proper (it is), oportet.
protect (to), mūniō, 4; tueor, 2.
protection, praesidium, -ī, n.
provide (to), prōvideō, 2.
punishment, poena, -ae, f.
pursue (to), sequor, 3.
put (to), pōnō, 3; put away,
abdō, 3; put upon, impōnō,
3, w. dat.
put in command (to), praeficiō,
3, w. dat.
put to flight (to), fugō, 1.
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, m.

Q

quantity, cōpia, -ae, f.
queen, rēgīna, -ae, f.
quick, celer, celeris, celere.
quiet, quiēs, -ētis, f.
quite, satis.

R

rally (to), concurrō, 3.
ramparts, moenia, -ium, n. plur.

rank, ōrdō, -inis, m.
rather, potius.
reach (to), perveniō, 4; perti-
neō, 2, w. ad and acc.
read (to), legō, 3.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
ready (to get), parō, 1; com-
parō, 1.
reason, causa, -ae, f.
recall (to), revocō, 1.
receive (to), accipiō, 3; recipiō, 3.
recognize (to), cōgnōscō, 3.
reënforcement, subsidium, -ī, n.
region, regiō, -ōnis, f.
Regulus, Rēgulus, -ī, m.
rejoice, gaudeō, 2, semi-dep.
relieve (to), succēdō, 3.
remain (to), maneō, 2; it re-
mains, reliquum est.
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
remarkable, īnsīgnis, -e.
remember (to), memoriā tenēre.
remote, longinquus, -a, -um.
renowned, clārus, -a, -um.
reply (to), respondeō, 2.
report (to), nūntiō, renūntiō, 1;
referō, dēferō.
republic, rēs pūblica, f.
reputation, fāma, -ae, f.; opīniō,
-ōnis, f.
rest, quiēs, quiētis, f.
rest (the), cēterī, -ae, -a; reliquī,
-ae, -a.
restrain (to), contineō, 2.
result, frūctus, -ūs, m.
retreat (to), sē recipere.

return (to), revertor, 3 ; redeō.
reward, praemium, -ī, n.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, m.
right, iūs, iūris, n.
right, adj., dexter, -tra, -trum.
river, flūmen, -inis, n.
road, via, -ae, f. ; iter, itineris, n.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, m.
rose, rosa, -ae, f.
rout, fuga, -ae, f.
route, iter, itineris, n. ; via, -ae, f.
royal power, rēgnum, -ī, n.
rule, imperium, -ī, n.
rule (to), regō, 3.
run together (to), concurrō, 3 ; run away, fugiō, 3.
running, cursus, -ūs, m.

S

sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum.
sad, trīstis, -e.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
safely, tūtō ; incolumis, -e, (adj.).
safety, salūs, -ūtis, f.
safety (in), incolumis, -e.
Saguntum, Saguntum, -ī, n.
sail (to), nāvigō, 1.
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake of (for the), causā, preceded by a genitive.
sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, f.
same (the), īdem, eadem, idem.
savage, atrōx, -cis.

save (to), servō, 1.
say (to), dīcō, 3.
scarcity, inopia, -ae, f.
schoolmaster, magister, -trī, m.
sea, mare, maris, n. ; by the sea, maritimus, -a, um.
second, secundus, -a, -um.
secondly, deinde.
secretly, clam.
see (to), videō, 2.
seek (to), petō, 3 ; quaerō, 3.
seem (to), videor, 2.
seize (to), occupō, 1 ; capiō, 3.
senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
send (to), mittō, 3 ; send forward, praemittō, 3.
separate (to), dīvidō, 3.
services, opera, -ae, f.
set forth, prōpōnō, 3.
set free (to), līberō, 1.
set on fire (to), incendō, 3.
set out (to), proficīscor, 3.
seven, indecl. septem.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
several, nōnnūllī, -ae, -a.
severe, gravis, -e.
severely, graviter.
sharp, ācer, -cris, -cre.
she, ea ; illa.
she-wolf, lupa, -ae, f.
ship, nāvis, -is, f.
short, brevis, -e ; in a short time, celeriter.
shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.
show (to), dēmōnstrō, 1 ; ostendō, 3.

shut (to), claudō, 3.

sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.

side, latus, -eris, n. ; from (on) all sides, undique.

sign, sīgnum, -ī, n.

signal, sīgnum, -ī, n.

silence, silentium, -ī, n. ; in silence, silentiō.

silver, argentum, -ī, n.

singly, singulī, -ae, -a.

six, indecl. sex.

size, māgnitūdō, -inis, f.

skilled in, perītus, -a, -um, w. genitive.

slaughter, caedēs, -is, f.

slave, servus, -ī, m.

slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, f.

slay (to), occīdō, 3 ; interficiō, 3.

slight, levis, -e.

small, parvus, -a, -um.

so, tam, ita ; = therefore, itaque ; so great, tantus, -a, -um.

soft, tener, -era, -erum.

soldier, mīles, -itis, m.

some (one), aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod) ; quis, quae, quid (after sī, nisi, nē) ; nōnnūllī, -ae, -a ; quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam) ; some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.

son, fīlius, -ī, m.

sort (of this, of such), ēius modī.

speak (to), loquor, 3.

spear, hasta, -ae, f.

speed, celeritās, -ātis, f.

spirit, animus, -ī, m.

spirited, ācer, ācris, ācre.

spring, vēr, vēris, n. ; spring (at the beginning of), prīmō vēre.

state, cīvitās, -ātis, f. ; rēs pūblica, f.

station (to), conlocō, 1 ; cōnstituō, 3.

stay (to), maneō, 2.

steward, vīlicus, -ī, m.

still, sed, tamen.

stir up (to), incitō, 1 ; excitō, 1.

stop (to), trans. intermittō, 3 ; intrans. moror, 1 ; cōnsistō, 3.

storm (to), oppūgnō, 1.

storming, oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f.

story, fābula, -ae, f.

strengthen (to), cōnfīrmō, 1.

strip (to), spoliō, 1.

stripped of, vacuus, -a, -um, w. abl. or ā, ab and abl.

strong, validus, -a, -um ; fortis, -e.

sturdy, validus, -a, -um.

subdue (to), pācō, 1 ; superō, 1 ; vincō, 3.

succeed in making (to), efficere ut.

successfully, fēlīciter.

succession (in), continuus, -a, -um.

such, ēius modī ; is, ea, id.

suddenly, subitō, imprōvīsō.

suitable, suited, idōneus, -a, -um.

summer, aestās, -ātis, f.

superintendent of an estate, vīlicus, -ī, m.

supply, cōpia, -ae, f.

support, subsidium, -ī, n.

surprise (to), opprimō, 3.

surrender (to), trans. trādō, 3 ; intrans. sē dēdere.

surround (to), circumveniō, 4.

sustain (to), sustineō, 2.

swift, vēlōx, -cis ; celer, -eris, -ere.

swiftly, celeriter, vēlōciter.

swiftness, celeritās, -ātis, f.

sword, gladius, -ī, m.

T

take (to), capiō, 3 ; take away, tollō, 3 ; take a position, cōnsistō, 3 ; take the place of, succēdō, 3 ; take back, recipiō, 3 ; take pains, operam dare ; take by storm, expūgnō, 1.

take possession of (to), occupō, 1 ; potior, 4, w. abl.

tale, fābula, -ae, f.

Tarentines, Tarentīnī, -ōrum, m. plur.

teacher, magister, -trī, m.

tell (to), narrō, 1 ; dīcō, 3.

temple, templum, -ī, n.

ten, indecl. decem.

tender, tener, -era, -erum.

terms, condiciō, -ōnis, f.

terrify (to), terreō, 2 ; perterreō, 2.

territory, fīnēs, -ium, m. plur.

than, quam ; abl. case.

thank (to), grātiās agere.

that, in purpose or result clauses, ut ; after verbs of fearing, nē ; before a comparative, quō ; after negative verbs of doubting, quīn ; that not, nē, ut nōn ; after verbs of fearing, ut.

that (one), ille, illa, illud ; is, ea, id ; that (of yours), iste, ista, istud.

their, gen. plur. of is ; refl. suus, -a, -um.

then, deinde, tum.

thence, inde, illinc.

there, ibi ; illīc.

therefore, itaque ; quārē.

they, eī, eae, ea ; illī, -ae, -a.

thing, rēs, reī, f.

think (to), putō, 1 ; exīstimō, 1 ; arbitror, 1 ; cōgitō, 1.

third, tertius, -a, -um.

this, hīc, haec, hōc.

this way (in), sīc, ita.

thither, eō, illūc, illō.

though, cum w. subj. ; quamquam ; etsī.

thousand, mīlle ; plur. mīlia.

three, trēs, tria.

through, per w. acc.

throughout, per w. acc.

thus, ita, sīc, hōc modō.

time, tempus, -oris, n.

timid, timidus, -a, -um.

tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.

to, dat. case ; ad, in, w. acc. ; expressing purpose, ut w. subj., ad w. gerundive, causā w. gen. of gerund or gerundive, supine.

to-day, hodiē.

together with, cum w. abl.; ūnā cum w. abl.

toil, labor, -ōris, m.

top of, summus, -a, -um.

touch (to), tangō, 3.

toward, ad w. acc.

tower, turris, -is, f.

town, oppidum, -ī, n.; urbs, urbis, f.

townsman, oppidānus, -ī, m.

trader, mercātor, -ōris, m.

tree, arbor, -oris, f.

tribe, gēns, gentis, f.

tribune, tribūnus, -ī, m.

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, f. plur.

trust (to), cōnfīdō, 3.

try (to), cōnor, 1; experior, 4.

Tullia, Tullia, -ae, f.

turn one's back (to), tergum dare.

twenty, vīgintī.

two, duo, duae, duo; which of two, uter, utra, utrum; each of two, uterque, utraque, utrumque.

U

uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.

under, sub w. abl. and acc.

understand (to), intellegō, 3.

undertake (to), īnstituō, 3.

unencumbered, expedītus, -a, -um.

unequal, inīquus, -a, -um.

unexpectedly, imprōvīsō.

unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um.

unharmed, incolumis, -e.

unimpaired, integer, -gra, -grum.

unite (to), coniungō, 3.

unless, nisi.

unlike, dissimilis, -e.

unskilled in, imperītus, -a, -um, w. genitive.

until, dum.

unwilling, invītus, -a, -um.

unwilling (to be), nōlō.

unworthy, indīgnus, -a, -um.

urge, hortor, 1.

use, ūsus, -ūs, m.

use (to), ūtor, 3.

used to, imperfect tense; soleō, 2.

V

vain (in), frūstrā.

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, f.; fortitūdō, -inis, f.

very, superl. degree; the very, ipse, -a, -um.

very easy, perfacilis, -e.

victor, victor, -ōris, m.

victory, victōria, -ae, f.

view, sententia, -ae, f.

vigorously, vehementer.

voice, vōx, vōcis, f.

W

wage (war), gerō, 3.

wait for (to), exspectō, 1.

walk (to), errō, 1.

wall, mūrus, -ī, m.; walls (of a city), moenia, -ium, n. plur.

wander (to), errō, 1.

want, inopia, -ae, f.

want to (to), volō.

war, bellum, -ī, n.

warn (to), moneō, 2.

watch, vigilia, -ae, f.

watch (to), tueor, 2.

water, aqua, -ae, f.

way, via, -ae, f. ; iter, itineris,
n. ; ratiō, -ōnis, f. ; modus, -ī,
m.

we, nōs.

weapon, tēlum, -ī, n.

wear out, cōnficiō, 3.

well, bene.

what ? quid ?

whatever, quisquis, quidquid.

when, ubi, cum, postquam.

whence, unde.

where, ubi.

wherefore, quārē.

whether . . . or, utrum . . . an.

which (of two), uter, utra,
utrum.

while, dum.

whither, quō.

who, which, what, rel. quī,
quae, quod ; interrog. quis,
quae, quid.

whoever, whichever, quīcumque,
quaecumque, quodcumque ;
quisquis, quidquid.

whole, tōtus, -a, -um.

why, quārē, cūr.

wicked, malus, -a, -um.

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

wife, coniūnx, -iugis, f.

will, voluntās, -ātis, f.; against
one's will, invītus, -a, -um.

wing (of an army), cornū, -ūs,
n.

winter, hiems, hiemis, f.

winter (to), hiemō, 1.

winter quarters, hīberna, -ōrum,
n. plur.

wise, sapiēns, -ntis.

wish, voluntās, -ātis, f.

wish (to), volō ; cupiō, 3.

with, cum w. abl. ; apud w. acc.

withdraw (to), cēdō, 3 ; discēdō,
3 ; trans. dēdūcō, 3.

within, in w. abl. ; of time, abl.
case.

without, sine w. abl. ; without
success, male.

withstand (to), sustineō, 2.

wolf, lupus, -ī, m.

woman, mulier, -eris, f.

wonder (to), mīror, 1.

wood, silva, -ae, f.

word, verbum, -ī, n.

work, opus, operis, n.; = exer-
tion, labor, -ōris, m.

work (to), labōrō, 1.

worthy, dīgnus, -a, -um, w. abl.

would that = optative subj.
with or without utinam.

wound, vulnus, -eris, n.

wound (to), vulnerō, 1.

wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

write (to), scrībō, 3.

wrong, iniūria, -ae, f.

Y

year, annus, -ī, m.

yield, cēdō, 3 ; concēdō, 3 ; permittō, 3.

you, tū; plur. vōs.

young man, iuvenis, -is, m. ; adulēscēns, -entis, m.

your, tuus, -a, -um (addressed to one) ; vester, -tra, -trum (addressed to more than one).

youth, iuvenis, -is, m.

Z

zeal, industria, -ae, f.; studium, -ī, n.

(1)